

Europäisches Patentamt
European Patent Office
Office européen des brevets



(11) **EP 1 553 084 A1**

(12)

EUROPEAN PATENT APPLICATION
published in accordance with Art. 158(3) EPC

(43) Date of publication:
13.07.2005 Bulletin 2005/28

(51) Int Cl.7: **C07D 211/46, C07D 211/58,
C07D 401/06, C07D 405/06,
C07D 409/06**

(21) Application number: **03733151.9**

(22) Date of filing: **29.05.2003**

(86) International application number:
PCT/JP2003/006754

(87) International publication number:
WO 2003/101964 (11.12.2003 Gazette 2003/50)

(84) Designated Contracting States:
**AT BE BG CH CY CZ DE DK EE ES FI FR GB GR
HU IE IT LI LU MC NL PT RO SE SI SK TR**
Designated Extension States:
AL LT LV MK

(30) Priority: **31.05.2002 JP 2002159338
27.01.2003 JP 2003017885**

(71) Applicant: **Takeda Pharmaceutical Company
Limited
Osaka-shi, Osaka 541-0045 (JP)**

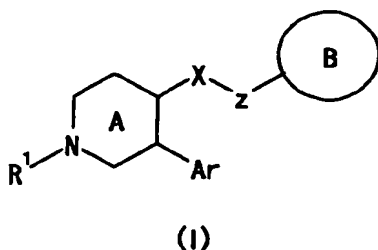
(72) Inventors:
• **IKEURA, Yoshinori
Kashiba-shi, Nara 639-0251 (JP)**

• **HASHIMOTO, Tadatoshi
Ibaraki-shi, Osaka 567-0828 (JP)**
• **TARUI, Naoki
Nara-shi, Nara 631-0061 (JP)**
• **SHIRAI, Junya
Amagasaki-shi, Hyogo 661-0033 (JP)**
• **YAMASHITA, Masayuki,
4-2-15-302, Motoyamanakamachi
Kobe-shi, Hyogo 658-0016 (JP)**

(74) Representative: **Rickard, Timothy Mark Adrian
Takeda Euro IP Department,
11-12 Charles II Street
London SW1Y 4QU (GB)**

(54) **PIPERIDINE DERIVATIVE, PROCESS FOR PRODUCING THE SAME, AND USE**

(57) The present invention provides a compound represented by the formula:



wherein Ar is an aryl group, an aralkyl group or an aromatic heterocyclic group, each of which may be substituted, R¹ is a hydrogen atom, an optionally substituted

hydrocarbon group, an acyl group or an optionally substituted heterocyclic group, X is an oxygen atom or an optionally substituted imino group, Z is an optionally substituted methylene group, Ring A is an optionally further substituted piperidine ring, and Ring B is an optionally substituted aromatic ring, provided that when Z is a methylene group substituted with an oxo group, R¹ is not a methyl group, and when Z is a methylene group substituted with a methyl group, Ring B is a substituted aromatic ring, or a salt thereof, which is a novel piperidine derivative having excellent antagonistic action for a tachykinin receptor and useful as a medicament, particularly an agent for preventing and/or treating urinary frequency and/or urinary incontinence.

EP 1 553 084 A1

Description

TECHNICAL FIELD

[0001] The present invention relates to a novel piperidine derivative having excellent antagonistic action for a tachykinin receptor, and a preparation method and use thereof.

BACKGROUND ART

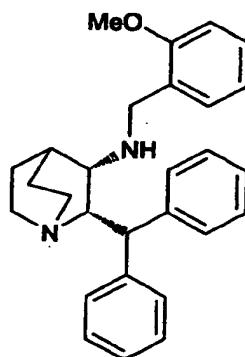
[0002] Tachykinin is a generic term for a group of neuropeptides. Substance P (SP), neurokinin A and neurokinin B are known in mammals, and these peptides are known to bind to the corresponding receptors (neurokinin-1, neurokinin-2 and neurokinin-3) that exist in a living body and thereby to exhibit various biological activities.

[0003] Of such neuropeptides, SP has the longest history and has been studied in detail. In 1931, the existence of SP in the extract from equine intestines was confirmed, and in 1971, its structure was determined. SP is a peptide consisting of 11 amino acids.

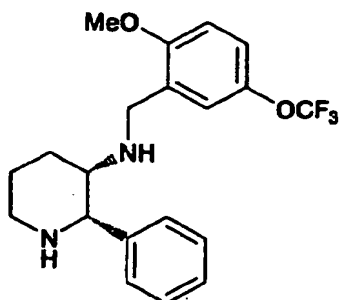
[0004] SP is broadly distributed over the central and peripheral nervous systems, and has various physiological activities such as vasodilation, enhancement of vascular extravasation, contraction of smooth muscles, excitation of neurons, salivation, enhancement of diuresis, immunological enhancement and the like, in addition to the function as a transmitter substance for primary sensory neurons. In particular, it is known that SP released from the terminal of the spinal (dorsal) horn due to a pain impulse transmits the information of pain to secondary neurons, and that SP released from the peripheral terminal induces an inflammatory response in the receptor thereof. Thus, it is considered that SP is involved in various disorders (e.g., pain, headache, particularly migraine, Alzheimer's disease, multiple sclerosis, cardiovascular modulation, chronic inflammatory diseases such as chronic rheumatic arthritis, respiratory diseases including asthma or allergic rhinitis, intestinal inflammatory diseases including ulcerative colitis and Crohn's disease, ocular damage and ocular inflammatory diseases, proliferative vitreous retinopathy, irritable bowel syndrome, urinary frequency, psychosis, vomiting, etc.) [see a review article: Physiological Reviews, Vol. 73, pp. 229-308 (1993); Journal of Autonomic Pharmacology, Vol. 13, pp. 23-93 (1993)].

[0005] At present, the following compounds have been known as those having antagonistic action for SP receptors.

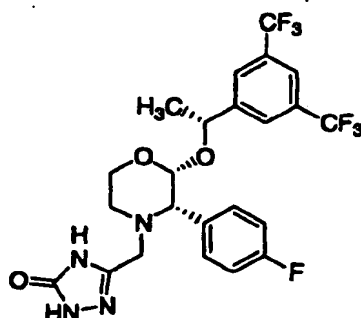
(1) In EP-A-436,334, disclosed are the compounds of a formula:



(2) in WO 92/17449, disclosed are the compounds of a formula:

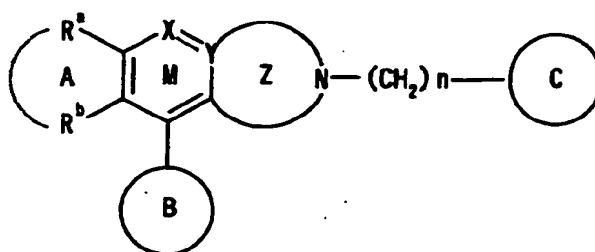


(3) in WO 95/16679, disclosed are the compounds of a formula:



and

(4) in JP-A-9-263585, disclosed are the heterocyclic compounds represented by a formula:



wherein Ring M is a heterocycle having $-N=C<$, $-CO-N<$ or $-CS-N<$ as a partial structure of



; R^a and R^b are bonded to each other to form Ring A, or they are the same or different and represent a hydrogen atom or a substituent in Ring M; Ring A and Ring B are optionally substituted homocyclic or heterocyclic rings, respectively and at least one of them is an optionally substituted heterocyclic ring; Ring C is an optionally substituted homocyclic or heterocyclic ring; Ring Z is an optionally substituted nitrogen-containing heterocyclic ring; and n is an integer of 1 to 6, or salts thereof.

[0006] An object of the present invention is to provide a piperidine derivative having antagonistic action for a tachykinin receptor, etc. with a different chemical structure from the known compounds including the above-mentioned compounds, a method of preparing the compound, an agent for ameliorating abnormal micturition comprising the com-

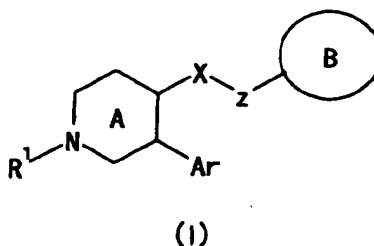
pound, and the like.

DISCLOSURE OF INVENTION

[0007] The present inventors have made extensive studies in consideration of the above-mentioned situation and, as a result, have found unexpectedly that piperidine derivatives represented by the formula (I) below or a salt thereof have excellent antagonistic action for a tachykinin receptor (particularly antagonistic action for a SP receptor) as based on their peculiar chemical structures and are sufficiently satisfactory as medicines. On the basis of these findings, the present inventors have completed the present invention.

[0008] Specifically, the present invention provides the following:

[1] a compound represented by the formula:



wherein Ar is an aryl group, an aralkyl group or an aromatic heterocyclic group, each of which may be substituted, R¹ is a hydrogen atom, an optionally substituted hydrocarbon group, an acyl group or an optionally substituted heterocyclic group, X is an oxygen atom or an optionally substituted imino group, Z is an optionally substituted methylene group, Ring A is a further optionally substituted piperidine ring, and Ring B is an optionally substituted aromatic ring, provided that when Z is a methylene group substituted with an oxo group, R¹ is not a methyl group, and when Z is a methylene group substituted with a methyl group, Ring B is a substituted aromatic ring, or a salt thereof;

[2] the compound as described in [1], wherein Ar is a phenyl group or a benzhydryl group, each of which may be substituted;

[3] the compound as described in [1], wherein R¹ is a hydrogen atom or an acyl group;

[4] the compound as described in [1], wherein Z is a methylene group optionally substituted with (i) an optionally substituted lower alkyl group or (ii) an oxo group, and Ring B is an optionally substituted benzene ring;

[5] the compound as described in [1], wherein Ar is a phenyl group, a benzhydryl group or a benzyl group, each of which optionally has 1 to 4 substituents selected from (A) a halogen atom, (B) a C₁₋₆ alkyl group, and (C) a heterocyclic group,

R¹ is (1) a hydrogen atom,

(2) a hydrocarbon group optionally having 1 to 3 substituents selected from (i) a C₁₋₆ alkoxy group, (ii) a C₁₋₆ alkoxy-carbonyl group, (iii) a carbamoyl group, (iv) a cyano group, (v) a C₁₋₆ alkylthio group, or (vi) a heterocyclic group optionally substituted with 1 or 2 oxo groups and optionally fused with a benzene ring,

(3) an acyl group represented by the formula: -(C=O)-Ra, -(C=S)-Ra, -SO₂-Ra, -SO₂-NRaRa', -(C=O)NRa-Ra' or -(C=O)O-Ra wherein Ra is (A) a hydrogen atom or

(B) (a) a hydrocarbon group or (b) a heterocyclic group, each of which may be substituted with 1 to 2 substituents selected from (i) a halogen atom,

(ii) a C₁₋₆ alkyl group optionally substituted with a heterocyclic group, C₁₋₆ alkanoyl or C₆₋₁₄ aryl-carbonyl,

(iii) a C₁₋₆ alkoxy group,

(iv) an amino group,

(v) a mono- or di-C₁₋₆ alkylamino group,

(vi) a C₁₋₆ alkanoylamino group,

(vii) a N-C₁₋₆ alkyl-N'-C₁₋₆ alkanoylamino group,

(viii) a C₁₋₆ alkoxy-carbonyl group,

(ix) a C₁₋₆ alkanoyl group optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkoxy, mono- or di-C₁₋₆ alkylamino, halogeno C₁₋₆ alkyl or a halogen atom,

(x) a C₆₋₁₄ aryl-carbonyl group,

(xi) a C₇₋₁₉ aralkyl-carbonyl group,

(xii) a C₃₋₆ cycloalkyl-carbonyl group,
 (xiii) a heterocyclic-carbonyl group,
 (xiv) a hydroxy group,
 (xv) a C₇₋₁₉ aralkyloxy group,
 (xvi) a C₃₋₆ cycloalkyloxy group,
 (xvii) a C₁₋₆ alkoxy-C₁₋₆ alkoxy group,
 (xviii) a carbamoyl group,
 (xix) a mono- or di-C₁₋₆ alkylcarbamoyl group,
 (xx) a C₁₋₆ alkylsulfonyl group,
 (xxi) a mono- or di-C₁₋₆ alkylaminosulfonyl group,
 (xxii) a formyl group,
 (xxiii) a formylamino group,
 (xxiv) an oxo group, and
 (xxv) a heterocyclic group optionally having 1 or 2 substituents selected from C₁₋₆ alkanoyl and C₁₋₆ alkoxy-C₁₋₆ alkanoyl, and
 Ra' is a hydrogen atom or a C₁₋₆ alkyl group, or
 (4) a heterocyclic group optionally having 1 or 2 substituents selected from a C₁₋₆ alkyl group and an oxo group,

X is O or NH,

Z is a methylene group, and

Ring B is a benzene ring optionally having 1 or 2 substituents selected from (i) a heterocyclic group optionally substituted with an optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkyl group or a C₁₋₆ alkylthio group, (ii) an optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkyl group, (iii) an optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkoxy group, (iv) a halogen atom, (v) nitro, (vi) a C₆₋₁₄ aryl group optionally substituted with optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkyl, (vii) an optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkylamino group, (viii) a cyano group, and (ix) a C₃₋₆ cycloalkyloxy, and optionally fused with a non-aromatic heterocyclic ring or a benzene ring;

[6] the compound as described in [1], wherein Ar is a phenyl group,

R¹ is -(C=O)-Rb or -(C=O)NRbRb' (Rb is (1) a hydrocarbon group or (2) a heterocyclic group, each of which optionally has a substituent selected from (i) hydroxy, (ii) C₁₋₆ alkoxy, (iii) C₁₋₆ alkanoyl, (iv) C₁₋₆ alkylsulfonyl, (v) amino, (vi) mono- or di-C₁₋₆ alkylamino, (vii) C₁₋₆ alkanoylamino or (viii) a heterocyclic group optionally substituted with 1 or 2 oxo groups, and Rb' is a hydrogen atom or a C₁₋₆ alkyl group.),

X is O or NH,

Z is a methylene group,

Ring B is a benzene ring optionally having 1 or 2 substituents selected from (i) a heterocyclic group optionally substituted with an optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkyl group, (ii) an optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkyl group and (iii) an optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkoxy group, and optionally fused with a non-aromatic heterocyclic ring;

[7] cis-4-((3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl)oxy)-N-methyl-3-phenyl-1-piperidinecarboxamide,
 cis-1-((1-acetyl-4-piperidinyl)carbonyl)-4-((3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl)oxy)-3-phenylpiperidine,
 cis-N-ethyl-4-((2-methoxy-5-(trifluoromethoxy)benzyl)amino)-3-phenyl-1-piperidinecarboxamide,
 cis-N-methyl-3-phenyl-4-(((5-(5-(trifluoromethyl)-1H-tetrazol-1-yl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzofuran-7-yl) methyl) amino)-1-piperidinecarboxamide,
 cis-N-ethyl-3-phenyl-4-(((5-(5-(trifluoromethyl)-1H-tetrazol-1-yl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzofuran-7-yl)methyl)amino)-1-piperidinecarboxamide,
 cis-1-((1-acetyl-4-piperidinyl)carbonyl)-3-phenyl-N-((5-(5-(trifluoromethyl)-1H-tetrazol-1-yl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzofuran-7-yl)methyl)-4-piperidineamine,
 cis-4-((2-methoxy-5-(5-(trifluoromethyl)-1H-tetrazol-1-yl)benzyl)amino)-N-methyl-3-phenyl-1-piperidinecarboxamide,
 cis-N-ethyl-4-((2-methoxy-5-(5-(trifluoromethyl)-1H-tetrazol-1-yl)benzyl)amino)-3-phenyl-1-piperidinecarboxamide,
 cis-1-(methoxyacetyl)-N-(2-methoxy-5-(5-(trifluoromethyl)-1H-tetrazol-1-yl)benzyl)-3-phenyl-4-piperidineamine,
 cis-1-((1-acetyl-4-piperidinyl)carbonyl)-N-(2-methoxy-5-(5-(trifluoromethyl)-1H-tetrazol-1-yl)benzyl)-3-phenyl-4-piperidineamine,
 cis-N-(2-(4-((2-methoxy-5-(5-(trifluoromethyl)-1H-tetrazol-1-yl)benzyl)amino)-3-phenyl-1-piperidinyl)-2-oxoethyl)acetamide,
 cis-N-(2-methoxy-5-(5-(trifluoromethyl)-1H-tetrazol-1-yl)benzyl)-1-((1-(methylsulfonyl)-4-piperidinyl)carbonyl)-3-phenyl-4-piperidineamine,
 cis-N-(2-methoxy-5-(5-(trifluoromethyl)-1H-tetrazol-1-yl)benzyl)-3-phenyl-1-(1H-tetrazol-1-ylacetyl)-4-pipe-

ridineamine,

cis-2-(4-((2-methoxy-5-(5-(trifluoromethyl)-1H-tetrazol-1-yl)benzyl)amino)-3-phenyl-1-piperidiny)-2-oxoethanol,

cis-N-(3-(4-((2-methoxy-5-(5-(trifluoromethyl)-1H-tetrazol-1-yl)benzyl)amino)-3-phenyl-1-piperidiny)-3-oxopropyl)acetamide,

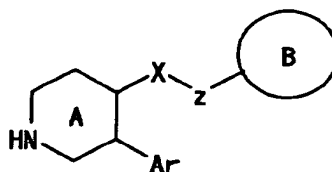
cis-1-acetyl-N-(2-methoxy-5-(5-(trifluoromethyl)-1H-tetrazol-1-yl)benzyl)-3-phenyl-4-piperidineamine,

cis-N-(2-methoxy-5-(5-(trifluoromethyl)-1H-tetrazol-1-yl)benzyl)-1-((methylsulfonyl)acetyl)-3-phenyl-4-piperidineamine, or

cis-1-(2-(4-((2-methoxy-5-(5-(trifluoromethyl)-1H-tetrazol-1-yl)benzyl)amino)-3-phenyl-1-piperidiny)-2-oxoethyl)-2,5-pyrrolidinedione, or a salt thereof;

[8] a prodrug of the compound as described in [1];

[9] a method of preparing the compound as described in [1], which comprises subjecting a compound represented by the formula:



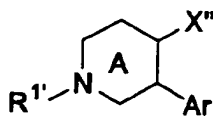
(Ia)

wherein each symbol has the same meanings as defined above, or a salt thereof to a reaction with a compound represented by the formula:



wherein R^{1a} is an optionally substituted hydrocarbon group, an acyl group or an optionally substituted heterocyclic group, a salt thereof or a reactive derivative thereof, and if desired, to deacylation or dealkylation;

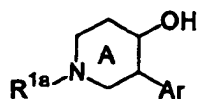
[10] a compound represented by the formula:



(II)

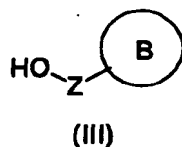
wherein $R^{1'}$ is an acyl group or an optionally substituted heterocyclic group, X^n is a hydroxy group or an amino group, and other symbols have the same meanings as defined above, provided that when X^n is a hydroxy group, $R^{1'}$ is neither an ethoxycarbonyl group nor a cyclopropylcarbonyl group, or a salt thereof;

[11] a method of preparing the compound as described in [1], which comprises subjecting a compound represented by the formula:



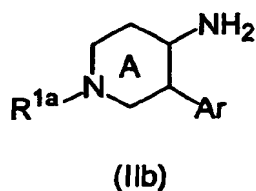
(IIa)

wherein each symbol has the same meanings as defined above, or a salt thereof to a reaction with a compound represented by the formula:

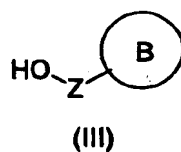


wherein each symbol has the same meanings as defined above, a salt thereof or a reactive derivative thereof, and if desired, to deacylation or dealkylation;
[12] a method of preparing the compound as described in [1], which comprises subjecting a compound represented by the formula:

15

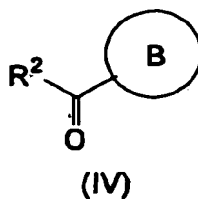


wherein each symbol has the same meanings as defined above, or a salt thereof to a reaction with a compound represented by the formula:



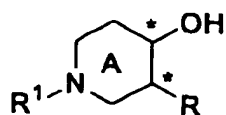
wherein each symbol has the same meanings as defined above, a salt thereof or a reactive derivative thereof, or subjecting Compound (IIb) to a reaction with a compound represented by the formula:

40



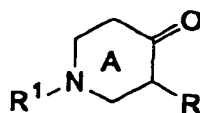
wherein R^2 is a hydrogen atom or an optionally substituted hydrocarbon group, and Ring B has the same meaning as defined above, in the presence of a reducing agent, and if desired, to deacylation or dealkylation;
[13] a method of preparing optically active alcohol represented by the formula:

55



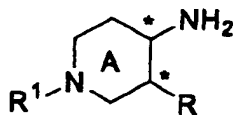
(IIc)

wherein R is an optionally substituted hydrocarbon group or an optionally substituted heterocyclic group, * is a chiral center, and other symbols have the same meanings as defined above. OH and R have a cis configuration relationship, or a salt thereof, which comprises subjecting a compound represented by the formula:



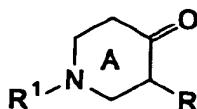
(V)

wherein each symbol has the same meanings as defined above, or a salt thereof to hydrogenation, in the presence of an optically active ruthenium-phosphine-amine complex and a base;
[14] a method of preparing optically active amine represented by the formula:



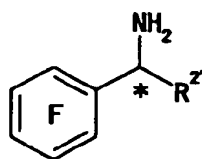
(IId)

wherein * is a chiral center and other symbols have the same meanings as defined above, NH₂ and R have a cis configuration relationship, or a salt thereof, which comprises subjecting a compound represented by the formula:



(V)

wherein each symbol has the same meanings as defined above, or a salt thereof, to condensation with an optically active compound represented by the formula:



(VI)

wherein Ring F is an optionally substituted, optionally fused benzene ring and R² is an optionally substituted hydrocarbon group, and other symbols have the same meanings as defined above, or a salt thereof, followed by hydrogenation and further hydrogenolysis;

[15] a medicament comprising the compound as described in [1] or a prodrug thereof;

[16] the medicament as described in [15], which is a tachykinin receptor antagonist;

[17] the medicament as described in [15], which is an agent for preventing and/or treating abnormality of lower urinary tract function, digestive organ diseases, inflammatory or allergic diseases, arthropathy and/or osteopathy, respiratory diseases, infection, cancer, central nerve diseases, circulatory diseases, pain, autoimmune diseases, hepatic diseases, pancreatic diseases, renal diseases, metabolic diseases, endocrine diseases, graft rejection, abnormality in characteristic of blood and/or blood components, gynecologic diseases, dermatologic diseases, ophthalmic diseases, otolaryngological diseases, diseases due to environmental and/or occupational factors, ataxia or chronic fatigue syndrome;

[18] the medicament as described in [15], which is an agent for preventing and/or treating urinary frequency and/or urinary incontinence;

[19] a method of preventing and/or treating abnormality of lower urinary tract function, digestive organ diseases, inflammatory or allergic diseases, arthropathy and/or osteopathy, respiratory diseases, infection, cancer, central nerve diseases, circulatory diseases, pain, autoimmune diseases, hepatic diseases, pancreatic diseases, renal diseases, metabolic diseases, endocrine diseases, graft rejection, abnormality in characteristic of blood and/or blood components, gynecologic diseases, dermatologic diseases, ophthalmic diseases, otolaryngological diseases, diseases due to environmental and/or occupational factors, ataxia or chronic fatigue syndrome, which comprises administering an effective amount of the compound as described in [1] or a prodrug thereof to a mammal; and

[20] use of the compound as described in [1] or a prodrug thereof for manufacturing an agent for preventing and/or treating abnormality of lower urinary tract function, digestive organ diseases, inflammatory or allergic diseases, arthropathy and/or osteopathy, respiratory diseases, infection, cancer, central nerve diseases, circulatory diseases, pain, autoimmune diseases, hepatic diseases, pancreatic diseases, renal diseases, metabolic diseases, endocrine diseases, graft rejection, abnormality in characteristic of blood and/or blood components, gynecologic diseases, dermatologic diseases, ophthalmic diseases, otolaryngological diseases, diseases due to environmental and/or occupational factors, ataxia or chronic fatigue syndrome.

[0009] Ar is an aryl group, an aralkyl group or an aromatic heterocyclic group, each of which may be substituted.

[0010] The "aryl group" includes, for example, a C₆₋₁₄ aryl group such as phenyl, naphthyl, anthryl, phenanthryl, etc., preferably, phenyl.

[0011] The "aralkyl group" includes, for example, a C₇₋₁₉ aralkyl group such as benzyl, naphthylethyl, benzhydryl, trityl, etc., preferably, benzyl or benzhydryl.

[0012] The "aromatic heterocyclic group" includes, for example, a 5- or 6-membered aromatic heterocyclic group having 1 to 4 hetero atoms of one or two kinds selected from a nitrogen atom, an oxygen atom and a sulfur atom in addition to carbon atoms (e.g., furyl, thienyl, pyridyl, imidazolyl, thiazolyl, oxazolyl, thiadiazolyl, triazolyl, tetrazolyl, etc.) and the like.

[0013] The substituent in the "aryl group", the "aralkyl group" and the "aromatic heterocyclic group" includes, for example, 1 to 3 substituents selected from (1) a halogen atom (e.g., fluorine, chlorine, bromine, iodine, etc.), (2) C₁₋₃ alkylendioxy (e.g., methylenedioxy, ethylenedioxy, etc.), (3) nitro, (4) cyano, (5) optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkyl, (6) optionally halogenated C₂₋₆ alkenyl, (7) optionally halogenated C₂₋₆ alkynyl, (8) optionally halogenated C₃₋₆ cycloalkyl, (9) C₆₋₁₄ aryl (e.g., phenyl, 1-naphthyl, 2-naphthyl, biphenyl, 2-anthryl, etc.), (10) optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkoxy, (11) optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkylthio or mercapto, (12) hydroxy, (13) amino, (14) mono-C₁₋₆ alkylamino (e.g., methylamino, ethylamino, etc.), (15) mono-C₆₋₁₄ arylamino (e.g., phenylamino, 1-naphthylamino, 2-naphthylamino, etc.), (16) di-C₁₋₆ alkylamino (e.g., dimethylamino, diethylamino, etc.), (17) di-C₆₋₁₄ arylamino (e.g., diphenylamino, etc.), (18) acyl, (19) acylamino, (20) acyloxy, (21) optionally substituted 5- to 7-membered saturated cyclic amino, (22) a 5- to 10-membered aromatic heterocyclic group (e.g., 2- or 3-thienyl, 2-, 3- or 4-pyridyl, 2-, 3-, 4-, 5- or 8-quinolyl,

1-, 3-, 4- or 5-isoquinolyl, 1-, 2- or 3-indolyl, 2-benzothiazolyl, 2-benzo[b]thienyl, benzo[b]furanyl, etc.), (23) sulfo, (24) C₆₋₁₄ aryloxy (e.g., phenyloxy, naphthyloxy, etc.) and the like.

[0014] The "optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkyl" includes, for example, C₁₋₆ alkyl (e.g., methyl, ethyl, propyl, isopropyl, butyl, isobutyl, sec-butyl, tert-butyl, pentyl, hexyl, etc.), optionally having 1 to 5, preferably 1 to 3 halogen atoms (e.g., fluorine, chlorine, bromine, iodine, etc.) and the like, specifically, methyl, chloromethyl, difluoromethyl, trichloromethyl, trifluoromethyl, ethyl, 2-bromoethyl, 2,2,2-trifluoroethyl, pentafluoroethyl, propyl, 3,3,3-trifluoropropyl, isopropyl, butyl, 4,4,4-trifluorobutyl, isobutyl, sec-butyl, tert-butyl, pentyl, isopentyl, neopentyl, 5,5,5-trifluoropentyl, hexyl, 6,6,6-trifluorohexyl, etc.

[0015] The "optionally halogenated C₂₋₆ alkenyl" includes, for example, C₂₋₆ alkenyl (e.g., vinyl, allyl, isopropenyl, butenyl, isobutenyl, sec-butenyl, etc.) optionally having 1 to 5, preferably 1 to 3 halogen atoms (e.g., fluorine, chlorine, bromine, iodine, etc.) and the like, specifically, vinyl, allyl, isopropenyl, butenyl, isobutenyl, sec-butenyl, 3,3,3-trifluoro-1-propenyl, 4,4,4-trifluoro-1-butenyl, etc.

[0016] The "optionally halogenated C₂₋₆ alkynyl" includes, for example, C₂₋₆ alkynyl (e.g., ethynyl, propargyl, butynyl, 1-hexynyl, etc.) optionally having 1 to 5, preferably 1 to 3 halogen atoms (e.g., fluorine, chlorine, bromine, iodine, etc.) and the like, specifically, ethynyl, propargyl, butynyl, 1-hexynyl, 3,3,3-trifluoro-1-propynyl, 4,4,4-trifluoro-1-butyne, etc.

[0017] The "optionally halogenated C₃₋₆ cycloalkyl" includes, for example, C₃₋₆ cycloalkyl (e.g., cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl, etc.) optionally having 1 to 5, preferably 1 to 3 halogen atoms (e.g., fluorine, chlorine, bromine, iodine, etc.) and the like, specifically, cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl, 4,4-dichlorocyclohexyl, 2,2,3,3-tetrafluorocyclopentyl, 4-chlorocyclohexyl, etc.

[0018] The "optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkoxy" includes, for example, C₁₋₆ alkoxy (e.g., methoxy, ethoxy, propoxy, isopropoxy, butoxy, isobutoxy, sec-butoxy, pentyloxy, hexyloxy, etc.) optionally having 1 to 5, preferably 1 to 3 halogen atoms (e.g., fluorine, chlorine, bromine, iodine, etc.) and the like, specifically, methoxy, difluoromethoxy, trifluoromethoxy, ethoxy, 2,2,2-trifluoroethoxy, propoxy, isopropoxy, butoxy, 4,4,4-trifluorobutoxy, isobutoxy, sec-butoxy, pentyloxy, hexyloxy, etc.

[0019] The "optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkylthio" includes, for example, C₁₋₆ alkylthio (e.g., methylthio, ethylthio, propylthio, isopropylthio, butylthio, sec-butylthio, tert-butylthio, etc.) optionally having 1 to 5, preferably 1 to 3 halogen atoms (e.g., fluorine, chlorine, bromine, iodine, etc.) and the like, specifically, methylthio, difluoromethylthio, trifluoromethylthio, ethylthio, propylthio, isopropylthio, butylthio, 4,4,4-trifluorobutylthio, pentylthio, hexylthio, etc.

[0020] The "acyl" includes, for example, -(C=O)-R³, -(C=S)-R³, -SO₂-R³, -SO-R³, -(P=O) (OR⁴) (OR⁴) (R³ is a hydrogen atom, an optionally substituted hydrocarbon group, an optionally substituted amino group, an optionally substituted hydroxy group or an optionally substituted heterocyclic group, and R⁴ and R⁴ are the same or different and represents a hydrogen atom or an optionally substituted hydrocarbon group) and the like.

[0021] The "optionally substituted hydrocarbon group" represented by R³, R⁴ and R⁴ includes, for example, the same group as those referred to herein for the "optionally substituted hydrocarbon group" represented by R¹ which will be described below.

[0022] The "substituent" in the "optionally substituted amino group" represented by R³ includes, for example, an optionally substituted hydrocarbon group, an optionally substituted hydroxy group, an acyl group and the like.

[0023] The "optionally substituted hydrocarbon group" as the "substituent" in the "optionally substituted amino group" represented by R³ includes, for example, the same group as those referred to herein for the "optionally substituted hydrocarbon group" represented by R¹ which will be described below.

[0024] The "optionally substituted hydroxy group" as the "substituent" in the "optionally substituted amino group" represented by R³ includes, for example, (i) a hydroxy group, (ii) a C₁₋₆ alkoxy group (e.g., a methoxy group, an ethoxy group, a propoxy group, an isopropoxy group, a butoxy group, a t-butoxy group, etc.), (iii) a C₆₋₁₄ aryloxy group (e.g., a phenyloxy group, a naphthyloxy group, etc.), (iv) a C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonyloxy group (e.g., a formyloxy group, an acetoxy group, a propionyloxy group, etc.) and (v) a C₆₋₁₄ aryl-carbonyloxy group (e.g., a benzyloxy group, a naphthyl-carbonyloxy group, etc.) and the like, and preferably, a hydroxy group and a C₁₋₆ alkoxy group (e.g., a methoxy group, an ethoxy group, a propoxy group, an isopropoxy group, etc.).

[0025] The "acyl group" as the "substituent" in the "optionally substituted amino group" represented by R³ includes, for example, -(C=O)-, -(C=S)-, -SO₂-, -SO-R, -(C=O)NR^{'''}, -(C=O)O-R, -(C=S)O-R, -(C=S)NR^{'''}R^{'''} (R is a hydrogen atom or an optionally substituted hydrocarbon group, R^{'''} is a hydrogen atom or lower alkyl group (e.g., a C₁₋₆ alkyl group such as methyl, ethyl, propyl, isopropyl, butyl, isobutyl, sec-butyl, tert-butyl, pentyl, hexyl, etc., and particularly preferably a C₁₋₃ alkyl group such as methyl, ethyl, propyl, isopropyl, etc.) and the like).

[0026] The "optionally substituted hydrocarbon group" represented by R⁴ includes, for example, the same group as those referred to herein for the "optionally substituted hydrocarbon group" represented by R¹ which will be described below.

[0027] The "C₁₋₆ alkoxy group," the "C₆₋₁₄ aryloxy group," the "C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonyloxy group" and the "C₆₋₁₄ aryl-carbonyloxy group" exemplified as "the optionally substituted hydroxy group" as the "substituent" in the "optionally substituted amino group" represented by R³, may be optionally further substituted with the same group as those referred

to herein for the "substituent" in the "optionally substituted hydrocarbon group" represented by R¹ which will be described below and the like, and such substituent is preferably a halogen atom (e.g., fluorine, chlorine, bromine, etc.) and the like.

[0028] The "optionally substituted amino group" represented by R³ may form a cyclic amino group (e.g., a 5- to 9-membered cyclic amino group having 1 to 3 hetero atoms such as an oxygen atom, a sulfur atom, etc. in addition to a nitrogen atom (e.g., a pyrrolidino group, a piperidino group, a morpholino group, etc.) and the like.

[0029] The "optionally substituted hydroxy group" represented by R³ includes, for example, the same group as those referred to herein for the "the optionally substituted hydroxy group" as the "substituent" in the "optionally substituted amino group" represented by R³, and the like.

[0030] The "optionally substituted heterocyclic group" represented by R³ includes, for example, the same group as those referred to herein for the "optionally substituted heterocyclic group" represented by R¹ which will be described below.

[0031] The "acylamino" as described above includes, for example, formylamino, C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonylamino (e.g., acetyl-amino, etc.), C₆₋₁₄ aryl-carbonylamino (e.g., phenylcarbonylamino, naphthylcarbonylamino, etc.), C₁₋₆ alkoxy-carbonylamino (e.g., methoxycarbonylamino, ethoxycarbonylamino, propoxycarbonylamino, butoxycarbonylamino, etc.), C₁₋₆ alkylsulfonylamino (e.g., methylsulfonylamino, ethylsulfonylamino, etc.), C₆₋₁₄ arylsulfonylamino (e.g., phenylsulfonylamino, 2-naphthylsulfonylamino, 1-naphthylsulfonylamino, etc.) and the like.

[0032] The "acyloxy" as described above includes, for example, C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonyloxy (e.g., acetoxy, propionyloxy, etc.), C₆₋₁₄ aryl-carbonyloxy (e.g., benzyloxy, naphthylcarbonyloxy, etc.), C₁₋₆ alkoxy-carbonyloxy (e.g., methoxycarbonyloxy, ethoxycarbonyloxy, propoxycarbonyloxy, butoxycarbonyloxy, etc.), mono-C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbamoyloxy (e.g., methylcarbamoyloxy, ethylcarbamoyloxy, etc.), di-C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbamoyloxy (e.g., dimethylcarbamoyloxy, diethylcarbamoyloxy, etc.), C₆₋₁₄ arylcarbamoyloxy (e.g., phenylcarbamoyloxy, naphthylcarbamoyloxy, etc.), nicotinoyloxy, etc.

[0033] The "5- to 7-membered saturated cyclic amino" in the "optionally substituted 5- to 7-membered saturated cyclic amino" includes, for example, morpholino, thiomorpholino, piperazin-1-yl, piperidino, pyrrolidin-1-yl, etc. The "substituent" in the "optionally substituted 5- to 7-membered saturated cyclic amino" includes, for example, C₁₋₆ alkyl (e.g., methyl, ethyl, propyl, isopropyl, butyl, isobutyl, sec-butyl, tert-butyl, pentyl, hexyl, etc.), C₆₋₁₄ aryl (e.g., phenyl, 1-naphthyl, 2-naphthyl, biphenyl, 2-anthryl, etc.), a 5- to 10-membered aromatic heterocyclic group (e.g., 2- or 3-thienyl, 2-, 3- or 4-pyridyl, 2-, 3-, 4-, 5- or 8-quinolyl, 1-, 3-, 4- or 5-isoquinolyl, 1-, 2- or 3-indolyl, 2-benzothiazolyl, 2-benzo[b]thienyl, benzo[b]furanyl, etc.) and the like. The number of the substituents is 1 to 3.

[0034] Ar is preferably a phenyl group, a benzhydryl group or a benzyl group, each of which may be substituted, and more preferably a phenyl group or a benzhydryl group, each of which may be substituted.

[0035] The "substituent" is preferably 1 to 4 (preferably 1 or 2) substituents selected from (A) a halogen atom (a chlorine atom, a fluorine atom, etc.), (B) a C₁₋₆ alkyl group, and (C) a heterocyclic group (a 5- or 6-membered aromatic heterocyclic group (pyridyl, etc.) having 1 to 4 hetero atoms of one or two kinds selected from a nitrogen atom, an oxygen atom and a sulfur atom in addition to carbon atoms and the like.

[0036] Ar is most preferably a phenyl group.

[0037] R¹ is a hydrogen atom, an optionally substituted hydrocarbon group, an acyl group or an optionally substituted heterocyclic group.

[0038] The "hydrocarbon group" in the "optionally substituted hydrocarbon group" represented by R¹ includes, for example, an aliphatic hydrocarbon group, a monocyclic saturated hydrocarbon group, an aromatic hydrocarbon group, etc., preferably having carbon number 1 to 16, and specifically, for example, an alkyl group, an alkenyl group, an alkynyl group, a cycloalkyl group, an aryl group, etc.

[0039] The "alkyl group" is preferably, for example, a lower alkyl group, etc., for example, a C₁₋₆ alkyl group such as methyl, ethyl, propyl, isopropyl, butyl, isobutyl, sec-butyl, tert-butyl, pentyl, hexyl, etc.

[0040] The "alkenyl group" is preferably, for example, a lower alkenyl group, etc., for example, a C₂₋₆ alkenyl group such as vinyl, 1-propenyl, allyl, isopropenyl, butenyl, isobutenyl, etc.

[0041] The "alkynyl group" is preferably, for example, a lower alkynyl group, etc., for example, a C₂₋₆ alkynyl group such as ethynyl, propargyl, 1-propynyl, etc.

[0042] The "cycloalkyl group" is preferably, for example, a lower cycloalkyl group, etc., for example, a C₃₋₆ cycloalkyl group such as cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl, etc.

[0043] The "aryl group" is preferably, for example, a C₆₋₁₄ aryl group such as phenyl, 1-naphthyl, 2-naphthyl, biphenyl, 2-anthryl, etc., specifically, a phenyl group, etc.

[0044] The substituent that the "hydrocarbon group" in the "optionally substituted hydrocarbon group" represented by R¹ may have includes, for example, a halogen atom (e.g., fluorine, chlorine, bromine, iodine, etc.), a nitro group, a cyano group, a hydroxy group, an optionally halogenated lower alkyl group (e.g., an optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkyl group such as methyl, chloromethyl, difluoromethyl, trichloromethyl, trifluoromethyl, ethyl, 2-bromoethyl, 2,2,2-trifluoroethyl, pentafluoroethyl, propyl, 3,3,3-trifluoropropyl, isopropyl, butyl, isobutyl, sec-butyl, tert-butyl, 4,4,4-trifluorobutyl, pentyl, isopentyl, neopentyl, 5,5,5-trifluoropentyl, hexyl, 6,6,6-trifluorohexyl, etc.), a lower alkoxy group (e.g., a

C₁₋₆alkoxy group such as methoxy, ethoxy, propoxy, isopropoxy, butoxy, isobutoxy, pentyloxy and hexyloxy, etc.), an amino group, a mono-lower alkylamino group (e.g., a mono-C₁₋₆ alkylamino group such as methylamino and ethylamino, etc.), a di-lower alkylamino group (e.g., a di-C₁₋₆ alkylamino group such as dimethylamino and diethylamino, etc.), a carboxyl group, a lower alkylcarbonyl group (e.g., a C₁₋₆ alkylcarbonyl group such as acetyl, propionyl, etc.), a lower alkoxy carbonyl group (e.g., a C₁₋₆ alkoxy-carbonyl group such as methoxycarbonyl, ethoxycarbonyl, propoxycarbonyl, butoxycarbonyl, etc.), a carbamoyl group, a thiocarbamoyl group, a mono-lower alkylcarbamoyl group (e.g., mono-C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbamoyl group such as methylcarbamoyl, ethylcarbamoyl, etc.), a di-lower alkylcarbamoyl group (e.g., a di-C₁₋₆ alkylcarbamoyl group such as dimethylcarbamoyl, diethylcarbamoyl, etc.), an arylcarbamoyl group (e.g., a C₆₋₁₀ aryl-carbamoyl group such as phenylcarbamoyl, naphthylcarbamoyl, etc.), an aryl group (e.g., a C₆₋₁₀ aryl group such as phenyl, naphthyl, etc.), an aryloxy group (e.g., a C₆₋₁₀ aryloxy group such as phenyloxy and naphthyloxy, etc.), an optionally halogenated lower alkylcarbonylamino group (e.g., an optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonylamino group such as acetylamino and trifluoroacetylamino, etc.), an oxo group, a 5- or 6-membered heterocyclic group, etc. The "hydrocarbon group" in the "optionally substituted hydrocarbon group" may have 1 to 5, preferably 1 to 3 of the substituents at the substitutable positions of the hydrocarbon group. If the number of the substituents is 2 or more, the substituents may be the same or different.

[0045] The "5- or 6-membered heterocyclic group" represented as the "substituent" in the "optionally substituted hydrocarbon group" represented by R¹, includes, for example, a 5- or 6-membered aromatic heterocyclic group, a saturated or non-saturated 5- or 6-membered non-aromatic heterocyclic group, etc. having 1 to 4 hetero atoms of one or two kinds selected from a nitrogen atom, an oxygen atom and a sulfur atom in addition to carbon atoms.

[0046] The "5- or 6-membered aromatic heterocyclic group" includes, for example, furyl, thienyl, pyrrolyl, oxazolyl, isoxazolyl, thiazolyl, isothiazolyl, imidazolyl, pyrazolyl, 1,2,3-oxadiazolyl, 1,2,4-oxadiazolyl, 1,3,4-oxadiazolyl, furazanyl, 1,2,3-thiadiazolyl, 1,2,4-thiadiazolyl, 1,3,4-thiadiazolyl, 1,2,3-triazolyl, 1,2,4-triazolyl, tetrazolyl, pyridyl, pyridazinyl, pyrimidinyl, pyrazinyl, triazinyl and the like.

[0047] The above-mentioned "5- or 6-membered non-aromatic heterocyclic group" includes, for example, pyrrolidinyl, tetrahydrofuryl, tetrahydrothienyl, piperidyl, tetrahydropyranyl, morpholinyl, thiomorpholinyl, piperazinyl and the like.

[0048] Such non-aromatic heterocyclic group may be further fused with other aromatic and/or non-aromatic homocyclic ring or heterocyclic ring.

[0049] The "5- or 6-membered heterocyclic group" may have substituent such as an oxo group, etc.

[0050] The "acyl group" represented by R¹ includes, for example, the same group as those referred to herein above for the foregoing "acyl" as the substituent of the "aryl group", the "aralkyl group" and the "aromatic heterocyclic group" represented by Ar.

[0051] The "heterocyclic group" in the "optionally substituted heterocyclic group" represented by R¹ includes, for example, a 5- to 14-membered (preferably 5- to 10-membered) (monocyclic to tricyclic, preferably, monocyclic or bicyclic) heterocyclic group containing 1 to 4 (preferably 1 to 3) hetero atoms of one or two kinds selected from a nitrogen atom, an oxygen atom and a sulfur atom in addition to carbon atoms, etc. For example, it includes a 5-membered cyclic group containing 1 to 4 hetero atoms selected from an oxygen atom, a sulfur atom and a nitrogen atom in addition to carbon atoms, such as 2- or 3-thienyl, 2- or 3-furyl, 1-, 2- or 3-pyrrolyl, 1-, 2- or 3-pyrrolidinyl, 2-, 4- or 5-oxazolyl, 3-, 4- or 5-isoxazolyl, 2-, 4- or 5-thiazolyl, 3-, 4- or 5-isothiazolyl, 3-, 4- or 5-pyrazolyl, 2-, 3- or 4-pyrazolidinyl, 2-, 4- or 5-imidazolyl, 1,2,3-triazolyl, 1,2,4-triazolyl and 1H- or 2H-tetrazolyl, a 6-membered cyclic group containing 1 to 4 hetero atoms selected from an oxygen atom, a sulfur atom and a nitrogen atom in addition to carbon atoms, such as 2-, 3- or 4-pyridyl, 2-, 3- or 4-pyridyl N-oxide, 2-, 4- or 5-pyrimidinyl, 2-, 4- or 5-pyrimidinyl N-oxide, thiomorpholinyl, morpholinyl, piperidino, 2-, 3- or 4-piperidyl, thiopyranyl, 1,4-oxazinyl, 1,4-thiazinyl, 1,3-thiazinyl, piperazinyl, triazinyl, 3- or 4-pyridazinyl, pyrazinyl and 3- or 4-pyridazinyl N-oxide, a bicyclic or tricyclic fused cyclic group containing 1 to 4 hetero atoms selected from an oxygen atom, a sulfur atom and a nitrogen atom in addition to carbon atoms, such as indolyl, benzofuryl, benzothiazolyl, benzoxazolyl, benzimidazolyl, quinolyl, isoquinolyl, phthalazinyl, quinazolinyl, quinoxalinyl, indolizyl, quinolizyl, 1,8-naphthyridinyl, dibenzofuran, carbazoyl, acridinyl, phenanthridinyl, chromanyl, phenothiazinyl and phenoxazinyl (preferably, a group formed by the fusion of the above-mentioned 5- or 6-membered ring to one or two 5- or 6-membered cyclic groups optionally having 1 to 4 hetero atoms selected from an oxygen atom, a sulfur atom and a nitrogen atom in addition to carbon atoms). Among these, a 5- to 7-membered (preferably 5- or 6-membered) heterocyclic group containing 1 to 3 hetero atoms selected from an oxygen atom, a sulfur atom and a nitrogen atom in addition to carbon atoms is preferred.

[0052] The substituent that the "heterocyclic group" in the "optionally substituted heterocyclic group" may have, includes, for example, a halogen atom (e.g., fluorine, chlorine, bromine, iodine, etc.), a lower alkyl group (e.g., a C₁₋₆ alkyl group such as methyl, ethyl, propyl, isopropyl, butyl, isobutyl, sec-butyl, tert-butyl, pentyl, hexyl, etc.), a cycloalkyl group (e.g., a C₃₋₆ cycloalkyl group such as cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl, etc.), a lower alkynyl group (e.g., a C₂₋₆ alkynyl group such as ethynyl, 1-propynyl, propargyl, etc.), a lower alkenyl group (e.g., a C₂₋₆ alkenyl group such as vinyl, allyl, isopropenyl, butenyl, isobutenyl, etc.), an aralkyl group (e.g., a C₇₋₁₁ aralkyl group such as benzyl, α -methylbenzyl, phenethyl, etc.), an aryl group (e.g., a C₆₋₁₀ aryl group such as phenyl, naphthyl, etc., preferably, a

phenyl group, etc.), a lower alkoxy group (e.g., a C₁₋₆ alkoxy group such as methoxy, ethoxy, propoxy, isopropoxy, butoxy, isobutoxy, sec-butoxy, tert-butoxy, etc.), an aryloxy group (e.g., a C₆₋₁₀ aryloxy group such as phenoxy, etc.), a lower alkanoyl group (e.g., formyl; a C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonyl group such as acetyl, propionyl, butyryl, isobutyryl, etc.), arylcarbonyl (e.g., a C₆₋₁₀ aryl-carbonyl group such as a benzoyl group, a naphthoyl group, etc.), a lower alkanoyloxy group (e.g., formyloxy; a C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonyloxy group such as acetyloxy, propionyloxy, butyryloxy, isobutyryloxy, etc.), an arylcarbonyloxy group (e.g., a C₆₋₁₀ aryl-carbonyloxy group such as benzoyloxy, naphthoyloxy, etc.), a carboxyl group, a lower alkoxy carbonyl group (e.g., a C₁₋₆ alkoxy-carbonyl group such as methoxycarbonyl, ethoxycarbonyl, propoxycarbonyl, isopropoxycarbonyl, butoxycarbonyl, isobutoxycarbonyl, tert-butoxycarbonyl, etc.), aralkyloxycarbonyl (e.g., a C₇₋₁₁ aralkyloxycarbonyl group such as benzyloxycarbonyl, etc.), a carbamoyl group, a mono-, di- or tri-halogeno-lower alkyl group (e.g., a mono-, di- or tri-halogeno-C₁₋₄ alkyl group such as chloromethyl, dichloromethyl, trifluoromethyl, 2,2,2-trifluoroethyl, etc.), an oxo group, an amidino group, an imino group, an amino group, a mono-lower alkylamino group (e.g., a mono-C₁₋₄ alkylamino group such as methylamino, ethylamino, propylamino, isopropylamino, butylamino, etc.), a di-lower alkylamino group (e.g., a di-C₁₋₄ alkylamino group such as dimethylamino, diethylamino, dipropylamino, diisopropylamino, dibutylamino, methylethylamino, etc.), a 3- to 6-membered cyclic amino group which may contain 1 to 3 hetero atoms selected from an oxygen atom, a sulfur atom and a nitrogen atom in addition to carbon atoms and one nitrogen atom (e.g., a 3- to 6-membered cyclic amino group such as aziridinyl, azetidiny, pyrrolidinyl, pyrrolinyl, pyrrolyl, imidazolyl, pyrazolyl, imidazolidinyl, piperidyl, morpholinyl, dihydropyridyl, pyridyl, N-methylpiperazinyl, N-ethylpiperazinyl, etc.), an alkylenedioxy group (e.g., a C₁₋₃ alkylenedioxy group such as methylenedioxy, ethylenedioxy, etc.), a hydroxy group, a nitro group, a cyano group, a mercapto group, a sulfo group, a sulfino group, a phosphono group, a sulfamoyl group, a monoalkylsulfamoyl group (e.g., a mono-C₁₋₆ alkylsulfamoyl group such as N-methylsulfamoyl, N-ethylsulfamoyl, N-propylsulfamoyl, N-isopropylsulfamoyl, N-butylsulfamoyl, etc.), a dialkylsulfamoyl group (e.g., a di-C₁₋₆ alkylsulfamoyl group such as N,N-dimethylsulfamoyl, N,N-diethylsulfamoyl, N,N-dipropylsulfamoyl, N,N-dibutylsulfamoyl, etc.), an alkylthio group (e.g., a C₁₋₆ alkylthio group such as methylthio, ethylthio, propylthio, isopropylthio, butylthio, sec-butylthio, tert-butylthio, etc.), an arylthio group (e.g., a C₆₋₁₀ arylthio group such as phenylthio, naphthylthio, etc.), a lower alkylsulfinyl group (e.g., a C₁₋₆ alkylsulfinyl group such as methylsulfinyl, ethylsulfinyl, propylsulfinyl, butylsulfinyl, etc.), an arylsulfinyl group (e.g., a C₆₋₁₀ arylsulfinyl group such as phenylsulfinyl, naphthylsulfinyl, etc.), a lower alkylsulfonyl group (e.g., a C₁₋₆ alkylsulfonyl group such as methylsulfonyl, ethylsulfonyl, propylsulfonyl, butylsulfonyl, etc.), an arylsulfonyl group (e.g., a C₆₋₁₀ arylsulfonyl group such as phenylsulfonyl, naphthylsulfonyl, etc.) and the like.

[0053] The "heterocyclic group" in the "optionally substituted heterocyclic group" may have 1 to 5, preferably 1 to 3 of the above-mentioned substituents at the substitutable positions of the heterocyclic group. If the number of the substituents is 2 or more, the substituents may be the same or different.

[0054] R¹ is preferably (1) a hydrogen atom,

(2) a hydrocarbon group (a C₁₋₆ alkyl group, C₇₋₁₉ aralkyl group (a benzyl group, etc.) or a C₆₋₁₄ aryl group (a phenyl group, etc.) optionally having 1 to 3 substituents selected from (i) a C₁₋₆ alkoxy group, (ii) a C₁₋₆ alkoxy-carbonyl group, (iii) a carbamoyl group, (iv) a cyano group, (v) a C₁₋₆ alkylthio group, or (vi) a heterocyclic group optionally substituted with 1 or 2 oxo groups and optionally fused with a benzene ring (e.g., a 5- or 6-membered aromatic heterocyclic group containing 1 to 4 hetero atoms of one or two kinds selected from a nitrogen atom, an oxygen atom and a sulfur atom in addition to carbon atoms, such as triazolyl, etc., optionally substituted with 1 or 2 oxo groups, and further optionally fused with a benzene ring,

(3) an acyl group represented by the formula: -(C=O)-Ra, -(C=S)-Ra, -SO₂-Ra, -SO₂-NRaRa', -(C=O)NRaRa' or -(C=O)O-Ra

wherein Ra is (A) a hydrogen atom or

(B) (a) a hydrocarbon group (a C₁₋₆ alkyl group, a C₂₋₆ alkenyl group, a C₂₋₆ alkynyl group, C₃₋₆ cycloalkyl, a C₇₋₁₉ aralkyl group (benzyl, 2-phenylethyl, etc.) or a C₆₋₁₄ aryl group (a phenyl group optionally fused with a 5- or 6-membered aromatic heterocyclic ring, etc.), or

(b) a heterocyclic group (e.g., a 5- or 6-membered aromatic or 4- to 6-membered non-aromatic heterocyclic group having 1 to 4 hetero atoms of one or two kinds selected from a nitrogen atom, an oxygen atom and a sulfur atom in addition to carbon atoms),

each of which optionally has 1 to 2 substituents selected from

(i) a halogen atom,

(ii) a C₁₋₆ alkyl group optionally substituted with a heterocyclic group (e.g., a 5- or 6-membered aromatic or non-aromatic heterocyclic group having 1 to 4 hetero atoms of one or two kinds selected from a nitrogen atom, an oxygen atom and a sulfur atom in addition to carbon atoms), C₁₋₆ alkanoyl or C₆₋₁₄ aryl-carbonyl,

(iii) a C₁₋₆ alkoxy group,

(iv) an amino group,

(v) a mono- or di-C₁₋₆ alkylamino group,

(vi) a C₁₋₆ alkanoylamino group,
 (vii) a N-C₁₋₆ alkyl-N'-C₁₋₆ alkanoylamino group,
 (viii) a C₁₋₆ alkoxy-carbonyl group,
 (ix) a C₁₋₆ alkanoyl group optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkoxy, mono- or di-C₁₋₆ alkylamino, halogeno C₁₋₆ alkyl
 5 or a halogen atom,
 (x) a C₆₋₁₄ aryl-carbonyl group,
 (xi) a C₇₋₁₉ aralkyl-carbonyl group,
 (xii) a C₃₋₆ cycloalkyl-carbonyl group,
 (xiii) a heterocyclic-carbonyl group (e.g., a 5- or 6-membered aromatic or non-aromatic heterocyclic-carbonyl group
 10 having 1 to 4 hetero atoms of one or two kinds selected from a nitrogen atom, an oxygen atom and a sulfur atom
 in addition to carbon atoms),
 (xiv) a hydroxy group,
 (xv) a C₇₋₁₉ aralkyloxy group,
 (xvi) a C₃₋₆ cycloalkyloxy group,
 15 (xvii) a C₁₋₆ alkoxy-C₁₋₆ alkoxy group,
 (xviii) a carbamoyl group,
 (xix) a mono- or di-C₁₋₆ alkylcarbamoyl group,
 (xx) a C₁₋₆ alkylsulfonyl group,
 (xxi) a mono- or di-C₁₋₆ alkylaminosulfonyl group,
 20 (xxii) a formyl group,
 (xxiii) a formylamino group,
 (xxiv) an oxo group, and
 (xxv) a heterocyclic group (e.g., a 5- or 6-membered aromatic or non-aromatic heterocyclic group having 1 to 4
 hetero atoms of one or two kinds selected from a nitrogen atom, an oxygen atom and a sulfur atom in addition to
 25 carbon atoms) optionally having 1 or 2 substituents selected from C₁₋₆ alkanoyl and C₁₋₆ alkoxy-C₁₋₆ alkanoyl, and

Ra' is a hydrogen atom or a C₁₋₆ alkyl group, or

(4) a heterocyclic group (e.g., a 5- or 6-membered aromatic heterocyclic group having 1 to 4 hetero atoms of one
 or two kinds selected from a nitrogen atom, an oxygen atom and a sulfur atom in addition to carbon atoms) optionally
 30 having 1 or 2 substituents selected from a C₁₋₆ alkyl group and an oxo group.

R¹ is preferably a hydrogen atom or an acyl group, most preferably, an acyl group represented by the formula:
 -(C=O)-Rb or -(C=O)NRbRb' [Rb is (1) a hydrocarbon group (e.g., a C₁₋₆ alkyl group, etc.) or (2) a heterocyclic group
 (e.g., a 5- or 6-membered non-aromatic heterocyclic group having 1 to 4 hetero atoms of one or two kinds selected
 from a nitrogen atom, an oxygen atom and a sulfur atom in addition to carbon atoms, such as piperidyl, etc.), each of
 35 which optionally has a substituent selected from (i) hydroxy, (ii) C₁₋₆ alkoxy, (iii) C₁₋₆ alkanoyl, (iv) C₁₋₆ alkylsulfonyl,
 (v) amino, (vi) mono- or di-C₁₋₆ alkylamino, (vii) C₁₋₆ alkanoylamino or (viii) a heterocyclic group optionally substituted
 with 1 or 2 oxo groups (e.g., a 5- or 6-membered aromatic or non-aromatic heterocyclic group containing 1 to 4 hetero
 atoms of one or two kinds selected from a nitrogen atom, an oxygen atom and a sulfur atom in addition to carbon atoms
 such as tetrazolyl, pyrrolidinyl, etc., and optionally substituted with 1 or 2 oxo groups), and Rb' is a hydrogen atom or
 40 a C₁₋₆ alkyl group].

[0055] X is an oxygen atom or an optionally substituted imino group.

[0056] The "substituent" in the "optionally substituted an imino group" represented by X is preferably an optionally
 substituted hydrocarbon group or an acyl group.

[0057] The "optionally substituted hydrocarbon group" includes, for example, the same group as those referred to
 45 herein above for the foregoing "optionally substituted hydrocarbon group" represented by R¹.

[0058] The "acyl group" includes, for example, the same group as those referred to herein above for the foregoing
 "acyl" as the substituent of the "aryl group", the "aralkyl group" and the "aromatic heterocyclic group" represented by Ar.

[0059] X is preferably O or NH.

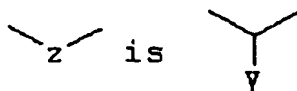
[0060] Z is an optionally substituted methylene group.

[0061] The "substituent" in the "optionally substituted methylene group" represented by Z includes, for example, 1
 50 or 2 substituents selected from an optionally substituted hydrocarbon group and an acyl group, or an oxo group.

[0062] The "optionally substituted hydrocarbon group" includes, for example, the same group as those referred to
 herein above for the foregoing "optionally substituted hydrocarbon group" represented by R¹.

[0063] The "acyl group" includes, for example, the same group as those referred to herein above for the foregoing
 55 "acyl" as the substituent of the "aryl group", the "aralkyl group" and the "aromatic heterocyclic group" represented by Ar.

[0064] Z is preferably a methylene group optionally substituted with any one of (i) an optionally substituted lower
 alkyl group or (ii) an oxo group. In other words, in the formula (I), it is preferable that



[0065] [Y is a hydrogen atom, an optionally substituted lower alkyl group or an oxo group].

[0066] The "lower alkyl group" of the "optionally substituted lower alkyl group" represented by Y includes, for example, a C₁₋₆ alkyl group such as methyl, ethyl, propyl, isopropyl, butyl, isobutyl, sec-butyl and tert-butyl, pentyl, hexyl, etc.

[0067] The "substituent" of the "optionally substituted lower alkyl group" represented by Y, includes, for example, the same group as those referred to herein above for the foregoing "substituent" in the "optionally substituted hydrocarbon group" represented by R¹.

[0068] Z is preferably a methylene group.

[0069] Ring A is an optionally further substituted piperidine ring. In other words, Ring A may further have 1 to 8 substituents in addition to X and Ar.

[0070] The "substituent" in the "optionally substituted piperidine ring" includes, for example, the same group as the substituent of the "aryl group", the "aralkyl group" and the "aromatic heterocyclic group" represented by Ar.

[0071] Ring A preferably has no substituent in addition to R¹, X and Ar.

[0072] Ring B is an optionally substituted aromatic ring.

[0073] The "aromatic ring" in the "optionally substituted aromatic ring" is preferably the foregoing "aromatic heterocyclic group" represented by Ar, a benzene ring or a fused ring thereof.

[0074] The "substituent" in the "optionally substituted aromatic ring" includes, for example, the same group as the substituent of the "aryl group", the "aralkyl group" and the "aromatic heterocyclic group" represented by Ar. The number of substituent is 1 to 5.

[0075] Ring B is preferably a benzene ring optionally having 1 or 2 substituents selected from (i) a heterocyclic group (a 5- or 6-membered aromatic heterocyclic group having 1 to 4 hetero atoms of one or two kinds selected from a nitrogen atom, an oxygen atom and a sulfur atom in addition to carbon atoms, etc.) optionally substituted with an optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkyl group or a C₁₋₆ alkylthio group, (ii) an optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkyl group, (iii) an optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkoxy group, (iv) a halogen atom (fluorine, chlorine, bromine, etc.), (v) nitro, (vi) a C₆₋₁₄ aryl group optionally substituted with optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkyl, (vii) an optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkylamino group, (viii) a cyano group, and (ix) a C₃₋₆ cycloalkyloxy, and optionally fused with a non-aromatic heterocyclic ring (a 5- or 6-membered non-aromatic heterocyclic group having 1 to 4 hetero atoms of one or two kinds selected from a nitrogen atom, an oxygen atom and a sulfur atom in addition to carbon atoms, such as furan, etc.) or a benzene ring.

[0076] Ring B is more preferably a benzene ring optionally having 1 or 2 substituents selected from (i) a heterocyclic group (e.g., a 5- or 6-membered aromatic heterocyclic group having 1 to 4 hetero atoms of one or two kinds selected from a nitrogen atom, an oxygen atom and a sulfur atom in addition to carbon atoms, such as tetrazolyl, etc.) optionally substituted with an optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkyl group (trifluoromethyl, etc.), (ii) an optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkyl group (trifluoromethyl, etc.) and (iii) an optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkoxy group (trifluoromethoxy, etc.), and optionally fused with a non-aromatic heterocyclic ring (a 5- or 6-membered non-aromatic heterocyclic group having 1 to 4 hetero atoms of one or two kinds selected from a nitrogen atom, an oxygen atom and a sulfur atom in addition to carbon atoms, such as furan, etc.).

[0077] Ring B is most preferably a benzene ring substituted with methoxy at 2-position, and with 5-(trifluoromethyl)-1H-tetrazol-1-yl at 5-position, respectively.

[0078] In Compound (I), when Z is a methylene group substituted with an oxo group, R¹ is not a methyl group, and when Z is a methylene group substituted with a methyl group, Ring B is a substituted aromatic ring.

[0079] Preferred is Compound (I) wherein

[0080] Ar is a phenyl group, a benzhydryl group or a benzyl group, each of which optionally has 1 to 4 (preferably 1 or 2) substituents selected from (A) a halogen atom (a chlorine atom, a fluorine atom, etc.), (B) a C₁₋₆ alkyl group, and (C) a heterocyclic group (e.g., a 5- or 6-membered aromatic heterocyclic group having 1 to 4 hetero atoms of one or two kinds selected from a nitrogen atom, an oxygen atom and a sulfur atom in addition to carbon atoms (pyridyl, etc.)),

R¹ is (1) a hydrogen atom,

(2) a hydrocarbon group (a C₁₋₆ alkyl group, a C₇₋₁₉ aralkyl group (a benzyl group, etc.) or a C₆₋₁₄ aryl group (a phenyl group, etc.) optionally having 1 to 3 substituents selected from (i) a C₁₋₆ alkoxy group, (ii) a C₁₋₆ alkoxy-carbonyl group, (iii) a carbamoyl group, (iv) a cyano group, (v) a C₁₋₆ alkylthio group, or (vi) a heterocyclic group optionally substituted with 1 or 2 oxo groups and optionally fused with a benzene ring (e.g., a 5- or 6-membered aromatic heterocyclic group containing 1 to 4 hetero atoms of one or two kinds selected from a nitrogen atom, an oxygen atom and a sulfur atom in addition to carbon atoms, optionally substituted with 1 or 2 oxo groups, and further optionally fused with a benzene ring, such as triazolyl, etc.),

(3) an acyl group represented by the formula: $-(C=O)-Ra$, $-(C=S)-Ra$, $-SO_2-Ra$, $-SO_2-NRaRa'$, $-(C=O)NRaRa'$ or $-(C=O)O-Ra$ wherein Ra is (A) a hydrogen atom or

(B) (a) a hydrocarbon group (a C_{1-6} alkyl group, a C_{2-6} alkenyl group, a C_{2-6} alkynyl group, C_{3-6} cycloalkyl, a C_{7-19} aralkyl group (benzyl, 2-phenylethyl, etc.) or a C_{6-14} aryl group (a phenyl group optionally fused with 5- or 6-membered aromatic heterocyclic ring, etc.), or

(b) a heterocyclic group (e.g., a 5- or 6-membered aromatic or 4- to 6-membered non-aromatic heterocyclic group having 1 to 4 hetero atoms of one or two kinds selected from a nitrogen atom, an oxygen atom and a sulfur atom in addition to carbon atoms),

each of which optionally has 1 to 2 substituents selected from

(i) a halogen atom,

(ii) a C_{1-6} alkyl group optionally substituted with a heterocyclic group (e.g., a 5- or 6-membered aromatic or non-aromatic heterocyclic group having 1 to 4 hetero atoms of one or two kinds selected from a nitrogen atom, an oxygen atom and a sulfur atom in addition to carbon atoms), C_{1-6} alkanoyl or C_{6-14} aryl-carbonyl,

(iii) a C_{1-6} alkoxy group,

(iv) an amino group,

(v) a mono- or di- C_{1-6} alkylamino group,

(vi) a C_{1-6} alkanoylamino group,

(vii) a N- C_{1-6} alkyl-N'- C_{1-6} alkanoylamino group,

(viii) a C_{1-6} alkoxy-carbonyl group,

(ix) a C_{1-6} alkanoyl group optionally substituted with C_{1-6} alkoxy, mono- or di- C_{1-6} alkylamino, halogeno C_{1-6} alkyl or a halogen atom,

(x) a C_{6-14} aryl-carbonyl group,

(xi) a C_{7-19} aralkyl-carbonyl group,

(xii) a C_{3-6} cycloalkyl-carbonyl group,

(xiii) a heterocyclic-carbonyl group (e.g., a 5- or 6-membered aromatic or non-aromatic heterocyclic-carbonyl group having 1 to 4 hetero atoms of one or two kinds selected from a nitrogen atom, an oxygen atom and a sulfur atom in addition to carbon atoms),

(xiv) a hydroxy group,

(xv) a C_{7-19} aralkyloxy group,

(xvi) a C_{3-6} cycloalkyloxy group,

(xvii) a C_{1-6} alkoxy- C_{1-6} alkoxy group,

(xviii) a carbamoyl group,

(xix) a mono- or di- C_{1-6} alkylcarbamoyl group,

(xx) a C_{1-6} alkylsulfonyl group,

(xxi) a mono- or di- C_{1-6} alkylaminosulfonyl group,

(xxii) a formyl group,

(xxiii) a formylamino group,

(xxiv) an oxo group, and

(xxv) a heterocyclic group (e.g., a 5- or 6-membered aromatic or non-aromatic heterocyclic group having 1 to 4 hetero atoms of one or two kinds selected from a nitrogen atom, an oxygen atom and a sulfur atom in addition to carbon atoms) optionally having 1 or 2 substituents selected from C_{1-6} alkanoyl and C_{1-6} alkoxy- C_{1-6} alkanoyl, and

Ra' is a hydrogen atom or a C_{1-6} alkyl group, or

(4) a heterocyclic group (e.g., a 5- or 6-membered aromatic heterocyclic group having 1 to 4 hetero atoms of one or two kinds selected from a nitrogen atom, an oxygen atom and a sulfur atom in addition to carbon atoms) optionally having 1 or 2 substituents selected from a C_{1-6} alkyl group and an oxo group,

X is O or NH,

Z is a methylene group, and

Ring B is a benzene ring optionally having 1 or 2 substituents selected from (i) a heterocyclic group (a 5- or 6-membered aromatic heterocyclic group having 1 to 4 hetero atoms of one or two kinds selected from a nitrogen atom, an oxygen atom and a sulfur atom in addition to carbon atoms, etc.) optionally substituted with an optionally halogenated C_{1-6} alkyl group or a C_{1-6} alkylthio group, (ii) an optionally halogenated C_{1-6} alkyl group, (iii) an optionally halogenated C_{1-6} alkoxy group, (iv) a halogen atom (fluorine, chlorine, bromine, etc.), (v) nitro, (vi) a C_{6-14} aryl group optionally substituted with optionally halogenated C_{1-6} alkyl, (vii) an optionally halogenated C_{1-6} alkylamino group, (viii) a cyano group, and (ix) a C_{3-6} cycloalkyloxy, and optionally fused with a non-aromatic heterocyclic ring (a 5- or 6-membered non-aromatic heterocyclic group having 1 to 4 hetero atoms of one or two kinds selected from a nitrogen atom, an oxygen atom and a sulfur atom in addition to carbon atoms, such as furan, etc.) or a benzene ring.

[0081] More preferred is Compound (I) wherein

Ar is a phenyl group,

R¹ is $-(C=O)-Rb$ or $-(C=O)NRbRb'$ (Rb is (1) a hydrocarbon group or (2) a heterocyclic group, each of which optionally has a substituent selected from (i) hydroxy, (ii) C₁₋₆ alkoxy, (iii) C₁₋₆ alkanoyl, (iv) C₁₋₆ alkylsulfonyl, (v) amino, (vi) mono- or di-C₁₋₆ alkylamino, (vii) C₁₋₆ alkanoylamino or (viii) a heterocyclic group optionally substituted with 1 or 2 oxo groups, and Rb' is a hydrogen atom or a C₁₋₆ alkyl group.),

X is O or NH,

Z is a methylene group, and

Ring B is a benzene ring optionally having 1 or 2 substituents selected from (i) a heterocyclic group optionally substituted with an optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkyl group, (ii) an optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkoxy group, and (iii) an optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkyl group, and optionally fused with a non-aromatic heterocyclic ring.

[0082] As Compound (I), preferred is the compound wherein when X is an oxygen atom, R¹ is an acyl group such as $-(C=O)-R^3$ [R³ has the same meanings as defined above, but preferably a C₁₋₆ alkyl group or a 5- to 7-membered (preferably 5- or 6-membered) non-aromatic heterocyclic group containing 1 to 3 hetero atoms selected from an oxygen atom, a sulfur atom and a nitrogen atom in addition to carbon atoms (e.g., piperidyl and the like. The heterocyclic group may be substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonyl group, etc.)], and Ring B is a benzene ring optionally having 1 or 2 substituents selected from a halogen atom and optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkyl.

[0083] Further, preferred is also the compound wherein when X is an imino group, R¹ is preferably an acyl group such as $-(C=O)-R^3$ or $-(C=O)NR''$ [R'' [R'' and R''' have the same meanings as defined above, but R'' is preferably a C₁₋₆ alkyl group optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkoxy, etc. or a 5- to 7-membered (preferably 5- or 6-membered) non-aromatic heterocyclic group containing 1 to 3 hetero atoms selected from an oxygen atom, a sulfur atom and a nitrogen atom in addition to carbon atoms (e.g., piperidyl, etc.) The heterocyclic group may be substituted with a C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonyl group, etc., and R''' is preferably a hydrogen atom or a C₁₋₆ alkyl group], and Ring B is preferably a benzene ring optionally having 1 or 2 substituents selected from a halogen atom, optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkyl, optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkoxy, or a 5- to 7-membered (preferably 5- or 6-membered) heterocyclic group containing 1 to 3 hetero atoms selected from an oxygen atom, a sulfur atom and a nitrogen atom in addition to carbon atoms (e.g., 1H- or 2H-tetrazolyl and the like. The heterocyclic group may have a substituent such as optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkyl, etc.), and optionally fused with a 5- or 6-membered ring containing 1 to 4 hetero atoms selected from an oxygen atom, a sulfur atom and a nitrogen atom in addition to carbon atoms (e.g., phenyl, benzofuranyl, etc.).

[0084] A salt of Compound (I) includes, for example, a metal salt, an ammonium salt, a salt with an organic base, a salt with an inorganic acid, a salt with an organic acid, a salt with basic or acidic amino acid, etc. Suitable examples of the metal salt include an alkali metal salt such as a sodium salt, a potassium salt, etc.; an alkaline earth metal salt such as a calcium salt, a magnesium salt, a barium salt, etc.; an aluminum salt, etc. Suitable examples of the salts with an organic base include salts with trimethylamine, triethylamine, pyridine, picoline, 2,6-lutidine, ethanolamine, diethanolamine, triethanolamine, cyclohexylamine, dicyclohexylamine, N,N'-dibenzyl ethylenediamine, etc. Suitable examples of the salts with an inorganic acid include salts with hydrochloric acid, hydrobromic acid, nitric acid, sulfuric acid, phosphoric acid, etc. Suitable examples of the salts with an organic acid include salts with formic acid, acetic acid, trifluoroacetic acid, phthalic acid, fumaric acid, oxalic acid, tartaric acid, maleic acid, citric acid, succinimide, malic acid, methanesulfonic acid, benzenesulfonic acid, p-toluenesulfonic acid, etc. Suitable examples of the salts with basic amino acid include salts with arginine, lysine, ornithine, etc. Suitable examples of the salts with acidic amino acid include salts with asparaginic acid and glutamic acid, etc.

[0085] Among these, pharmaceutically acceptable salts are preferred. For example, if the compound has acidic functional group, preferred are inorganic salts such as an alkali metal salt (e.g., sodium salt, potassium salt, etc.), an alkaline earth metal salt (e.g., calcium salt, magnesium salt, barium salt, etc.), an ammonium salt, etc. If the compound has a basic functional group, preferred are salts with an inorganic acid such as hydrochloric acid, hydrobromic acid, nitric acid, sulfuric acid, phosphoric acid, etc., or salts with an organic acid such as acetic acid, phthalic acid, fumaric acid, oxalic acid, tartaric acid, maleic acid, citric acid, succinic acid, methanesulfonic acid, p-toluene sulfonic acid, etc.

[0086] The prodrug of Compound (I) or a salt thereof of the present invention means a compound which is converted to Compound (I) under the physiological condition in the living body by a reaction with an enzyme, a gastric acid, or the like, that is, by enzymatic oxidation, reduction, hydrolysis, etc.; by hydrolysis with gastric acid, etc.

[0087] The prodrug of Compound (I) of the present invention includes a compound wherein the amino group of Compound (I) is modified with acyl, alkyl or phosphoryl (e.g., a compound wherein the amino group of Compound (I), etc. is modified to eicosanyl, alanyl, pentylaminocarbonyl, (5-methyl-2-oxo-1,3-dioxolen-4-yl)methoxycarbonyl, tetrahydrofuryl, pyrrolidylmethyl, pivaloyloxymethyl, tert-butyl, etc.), and the like; a compound wherein the hydroxy group of Compound (I) is modified with acyl, alkyl, phosphoric acid or boric acid (e.g., a compound wherein the hydroxy group of Compound (I) is modified with acetyl, palmitoyl, propanoyl, pivaloyl, succinyl, fumaryl, alanyl or dimethylaminomethylcarbonyl, etc.) and the like; a compound wherein a carboxyl group of Compound (I) is modified to ester or amide (e.g., a compound wherein a carboxyl group of Compound (I) is modified to ethylester, phenyl ester, carboxymethylester,

dimethylaminomethylester, pivaloyloxymethylester, ethoxycarbonyloxyethylester, phthalidyl ester, (5-methyl-2-oxo-1,3-dioxolen-4-yl)methylester, cyclohexyloxycarbonylethylester or methylamide, etc.) and the like; etc. These prodrugs can be produced by per se known methods from Compound (I), etc.

[0088] In addition, the prodrug of Compound (I) may be a compound, which is converted into Compound (I) under the physiological conditions, as described in "Pharmaceutical Research and Development", Vol. 7 (Drug Design), pp. 163-198 (1990), published by Hirokawa Publishing Co.

[0089] A solvate, for example, hydrate of the compound represented by the formula (I) and a salt thereof are all included in the scope of the present invention. The compound represented by the formula (I) may be labeled with an isotope (e.g., ^3H , ^{14}C , ^{35}S , ^{125}I , etc.) and the like.

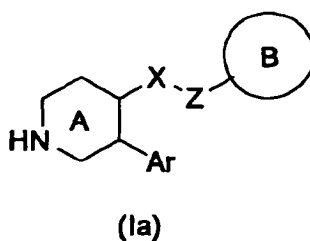
[0090] If Compound (I) according to the present invention has chiral center, isomers such as an enantiomer or a diastereomer may exist. Such isomers and a mixture thereof are all included in the scope of the present invention. In addition, there can be instances where the isomers by conformation are generated in cases, but such isomers or a mixture thereof are also included in Compound (I) or a salt thereof of the present invention. Compound (I) is preferably cis-isomer in view of activity.

[0091] A method of preparing Compound (I) or a salt thereof of the present invention will be explained in the following.

[0092] Compound (I) or a salt thereof of the present invention can be produced using Method A, Method B or Method C below.

[Method A]

[0093] Compound (I) or a salt thereof of the present invention can be produced by subjecting a compound represented by the formula:



wherein each symbol has the same meanings as defined above, (hereinafter, referred to as Compound (Ia)) or a salt thereof, to a reaction with a compound represented by the formula



wherein R^{1a} is an optionally substituted hydrocarbon group, an acyl group or an optionally substituted heterocyclic group, which is an alkylating agent or an acylating agent, a salt thereof or a reactive derivative thereof.

[0094] The "optionally substituted hydrocarbon group, the acyl group or the optionally substituted heterocyclic group" represented by R^{1a} includes, for example, the same group as those referred to herein above for the foregoing group represented by R^1 .

[0095] The reactive derivative of the compound represented by $\text{R}^{1a}\text{-OH}$ or a salt thereof includes, for example, a compound represented by the formula:



wherein L is a leaving group, and R^{1a} has the same meanings as defined above, (hereinafter, simply referred to as a reactive derivative) or a salt thereof.

[0096] The leaving group represented by L includes, for example, a hydroxy group, a halogen atom (e.g., a chlorine atom, a bromine atom, an iodine atom, etc.), a substituted sulfonyloxy group (e.g., a C_{1-6} alkylsulfonyloxy group such as methanesulfonyloxy, ethanesulfonyloxy, etc.; a C_{6-14} arylsulfonyloxy group such as benzenesulfonyloxy, p-toluenesulfonyloxy, etc.; and a C_{7-16} aralkylsulfonyloxy group such as a benzylsulfonyloxy group, etc.), acyloxy (acetoxy, benzoyloxy, etc.), an oxy group substituted with a hetero ring or an aryl group (succinimide, benzotriazole, quinoline, 4-nitrophenyl, etc.), a hetero ring (imidazole, etc.) and the like.

[0097] The reaction using the above-mentioned reactive derivative as an alkylating agent can be carried out by subjecting the reactive derivative to a reaction, usually in a solvent in the presence of base. The solvent includes, for example, alcohols such as methanol, ethanol, propanol, etc., ethers such as dimethoxyethane, dioxane, tetrahydrofuran, etc., ketones such as acetone, etc., nitriles such as acetonitrile, etc., amides such as N,N-dimethylformamide, etc., sulfoxides such as dimethylsulfoxide, etc., water and the like, which may be used in a suitable mixture. The base includes, for example, an organic base such as trimethylamine, triethylamine, N-methylmorpholine, pyridine, picoline, N,N-dimethylaniline, etc., and an inorganic base such as potassium carbonate, sodium carbonate, potassium hydroxide, sodium hydroxide, etc. The amount of the base is, for example, in the order of about 1 to about 100 molar equivalents, preferably about 1 to about 10 molar equivalents, relative to 1 mole of the substrate.

[0098] The reactive derivative includes, for example, halides (e.g., chloride, bromide, iodide, etc.), sulfuric acid esters, or sulfonic acid esters (e.g., methanesulfonate, p-toluenesulfonate, benzenesulfonate, etc.) and the like, and particularly halides. The amount of the reactive derivative is, for example, in the order of 1 to 5 molar equivalents, preferably 1 to 3 molar equivalents, relative to 1 mole of the substrate.

[0099] If necessary, the reaction can be facilitated by adding an additive. Such additive includes, for example, iodides such as sodium iodide, potassium iodide, etc. and the amount is about 0.1 to 10 molar equivalents, preferably about 0.1 to 5 molar equivalents, relative to 1 mole of the substrate.

[0100] The reaction temperature is usually in the order of -10°C to 200°C, preferably about 0°C to 110°C, and the reaction time is usually in the order of 0.5 hour to 48 hours, preferably 0.5 hour to 16 hours.

[0101] In addition, if the leaving group L is a hydroxy group in the above-mentioned reactive derivative, the reaction can be also carried out by adding an organic phosphate compound in the presence of a base according to, for example, a method described in JP-A-1983-43979 and the like. The organic phosphate compound used herein includes, for example, alkyl o-phenylenephosphate such as methyl phenylenephosphate, ethyl o-phenylenephosphate (EPPA), etc., aryl o-phenylenephosphate such as phenyl o-phenylenephosphate, p-chlorophenyl o-phenylenephosphate, etc. and the like, and particularly EPPA. The base includes, for example, alkylamines such as trimethylamine, triethylamine, diisopropylethylamine, tri(n-butyl)amine, diisobutylamine, dicyclohexylamine, etc., cyclic amines such as pyridine, 2,6-lutidine etc. and the like, and preferably, organic tertiary amines such as diisopropylethylamine, etc. The amounts of the above-mentioned reactive derivative, the base and the organic phosphate compound vary depending on the kinds of Compound (Ia), the above-mentioned reactive derivative, the base and the solvent to be used, and further other reaction conditions, but usually in the order of about 1 to about 10 molar equivalents, preferably about 1 to about 5 molar equivalents, respectively to 1 mole of Compound (Ia). The reaction is usually carried out in a solvent inert to the reaction. The solvent includes, for example, halogenated hydrocarbons such as dichloromethane, dichloroethane, chloroform, etc.; nitriles such as acetonitrile, etc.; esters such as ethyl acetate, etc.; ethers such as dimethoxyethane, tetrahydrofuran, dioxane, etc.; hydrocarbons such as benzene, toluene, etc.; amides such as dimethylformamide, hexamethylphosphoramide, etc.; non-protic solvents including sulfoxides such as dimethylsulfoxide, etc., and a mixture thereof, and preferably, halogenated hydrocarbons such as dichloromethane, dichloroethane, etc.

[0102] The reaction temperature is for example, in the order of about -78°C to about 200°C, preferably about -20°C to about 150°C. The reaction time varies depending on the kinds of the Compound (Ia), the reactive derivative, the base and the solvent to be used, and further other reaction conditions, but for example, in the order of about 1 to about 72 hours, preferably about 1 to about 24 hours.

[0103] The reaction using the above-mentioned reactive derivative as an acylating agent depends on the kind of reactive derivative or substrate, but it is usually carried out in a solvent. If necessary, a convenient base may be added to facilitate the reaction. The solvent includes, for example, hydrocarbons such as benzene, toluene, etc., ethers such as ethyl ether, dioxane, tetrahydrofuran, etc., esters such as ethyl acetate, etc., halogenated hydrocarbons such as chloroform, dichloromethane, etc., esters such as ethyl acetate, etc., amides such as N,N-dimethylformamide, etc., aromatic amines such as pyridine, etc., water and the like, which may be used in a suitable mixture. In addition, the base includes, for example, alkali metal hydroxides such as sodium hydroxide, potassium hydroxide, etc., hydrogen carbonates such as sodium hydrogen carbonate, potassium hydrogen carbonate, etc., carbonate such as sodium carbonate, potassium carbonate, etc., acetate such as sodium acetate, tertiary amines such as trimethylamine, triethylamine, N-methylmorpholine, etc., aromatic amines such as pyridine, picoline, N,N-dimethylaniline, etc. and the like. The amount of the base is, for example, in the order of about 1 to about 100 molar equivalents, preferably about 1 to about 10 molar equivalents, relative to 1 mole of the substrate.

[0104] The acylating agent includes, for example, carboxylic acid, sulfonic acid, phosphoric acid, carbonic acid or a reactive derivative thereof (e.g., acid halide, acid anhydride, mixed acid anhydride, active ester, etc.), isocyanic acid ester, isothiocyanic acid ester and the like.

[0105] The amount of such acylating agent is usually 1 to 10 molar equivalents, preferably 1 to 3 molar equivalents, relative to 1 mole of the substrate. The reaction temperature is usually in the order of -10°C to 150°C, preferably about 0°C to 100°C, and the reaction time is usually in the order of 15 minutes to 24 hours, preferably 30 minutes to 16 hours.

[0106] In addition, Compound (I) or a salt thereof can be also produced by reacting Compound (Ia) with aldehydes,

and reducing the produced imine or iminium ion.

[0107] The reaction to produce imine or iminium ion is usually carried out in a solvent which has no adverse influence on the reaction. Such solvent includes, for example, aromatic hydrocarbons such as toluene, xylene, etc., aliphatic hydrocarbons such as heptane, hexane, etc., halogenated hydrocarbons such as chloroform, dichloromethane, etc., ethers such as diethyl ether, tetrahydrofuran, dioxane, etc., alcohols such as methanol, ethanol, 2-propanol, butanol, benzyl alcohol, etc., nitriles such as acetonitrile, etc., dimethylformamide, dimethylsulfoxide and the like. Such solvent may be used in a mixture at a suitable ratio. The aldehyde includes, for example, formalin, optionally substituted C₁₋₅alkyl-aldehyde (e.g., acetaldehyde, etc.), optionally substituted aromatic aldehyde (e.g., benzaldehyde, etc.) and the like, and the amount is, for example, in the order of 1 to 100 molar equivalents, preferably 1 to 20 molar equivalents, relative to 1 mole of the substrate.

[0108] If necessary, the reaction can advantageously proceed by adding a catalyst. Such catalyst is preferably mineral acids (e.g., hydrochloric acid, hydrobromic acid, sulfuric acid, etc.), carboxylic acids (e.g., formic acid, acetic acid, propionic acid, trifluoroacetic acid, etc.), sulfonic acids (e.g., methanesulfonic acid, p-toluenesulfonic acid, etc.), Lewis acids (e.g., aluminum chloride, zinc chloride, zinc bromide, boron trifluoride, titanium chloride, etc.), acetates (sodium acetate, potassium acetate, etc.) and molecular sieves (molecular sieves 3A, 4A, 5A, etc.). The amount of the catalyst is, for example, in the order of about 0.01 to 50 molar equivalents, preferably about 0.1 to 10 molar equivalents, relative to 1 mole of Compound (Ia).

[0109] The reaction temperature is usually in the order of about 0°C to 200°C, preferably about 20°C to 150°C, and the reaction time is usually in the order of 0.5 hour to 48 hours, preferably 0.5 hour to 24 hours.

[0110] The reduction of imine or iminium ion can be carried out by per se known methods, for example, a method using metal hydride or a method by catalytic hydrogenation.

[0111] The metal hydride as the reducing agent includes, for example, sodium borohydride, lithium borohydride, zinc borohydride, sodium cyanoborohydride, sodium triacetoxyborohydride, lithium cyanoborohydride, aluminum dibutylhydride, aluminum hydride, lithium aluminum hydride, a borane complex (a borane-THF complex, catechol borane, etc.) and the like. The metal hydride includes preferably sodium borohydride, sodium cyanoborohydride, sodium triacetoxyborohydride, etc. The amount of the reducing agent is, for example, in the order of 1 to 50 molar equivalents, preferably 1 to 10 molar equivalents, relative to 1 mole of the substrate. In addition, the reaction solvent includes, for example, aromatic hydrocarbons such as toluene, xylene, etc., aliphatic hydrocarbons such as heptane, hexane, etc., halogenated hydrocarbons such as chloroform, dichloromethane, etc., ethers such as diethyl ether, tetrahydrofuran, dioxane, etc., alcohols such as methanol, ethanol, 2-propanol, butanol, benzyl alcohol, etc., nitriles such as acetonitrile, etc., dimethylformamide, dimethylsulfoxide and the like. Such solvent may be used in a mixture at a suitable ratio. The reaction temperature is usually in the order of about -80°C to 80°C, preferably about -40°C to 40°C, and the reaction time is usually in the order of 5 minutes to 48 hours, preferably 1 hour to 24 hours.

[0112] The catalytic hydrogenation can be carried out under hydrogen atmosphere and in the presence of a catalyst. The catalyst to be used is preferably palladium compounds such as palladium carbon, palladium hydroxide, palladium oxide, etc., nickel compounds such as Raney-nickel, etc., platinum compounds such as platinum oxide, platinum carbon, etc., rhodium compounds such as rhodium acetate, etc. and the like, and the amount is in the order of about 0.001 to 1 equivalent, preferably about 0.01 to 0.5 equivalent. The catalytic hydrogenation proceeds usually in a solvent inert to the reaction. Such solvent includes, for example, alcohols such as methanol, ethanol, propanol, butanol, etc.; hydrocarbons such as benzene, toluene, xylene, etc.; halogenated hydrocarbons such as dichloromethane, chloroform, etc.; ethers such as diethyl ether, dioxane, tetrahydrofuran, etc.; esters such as ethyl acetate, etc.; amides such as N, N-dimethylformamide, etc.; carboxylic acids such as acetic acid, etc.; water, or a mixture thereof. The hydrogen pressure under which the reaction proceeds is usually in the order of about 1 to 50 atm, preferably about 1 to 10 atm. The reaction temperature is usually in the order of about 0°C to 150°C, preferably about 20°C to 100°C, and the reaction time is usually in the order of 5 minutes to 72 hours, preferably 0.5 hour to 40 hours.

[0113] Compound (I) can be also produced directly from Compound (Ia) in the present process, while carrying out the reaction of producing and of reducing imine or iminium ion at the same time, without isolating the intermediate imine or iminium ion. In this case, pH of the reaction mixture is preferably from about 4 to about 5.

[0114] Compound (Ia) used as the starting compound in Method A can be produced by subjecting Compound (I) or a salt thereof obtained by Method B or Method C below to deacylation or dealkylation.

[0115] Such deacylation can be carried out according to a known method. For example, it is usually carried out in the presence of an acid or a base, if necessary, in a solvent which has no adverse influence on the reaction though it depends on the kinds of the substrate.

[0116] The acid is preferably mineral acids (e.g., hydrochloric acid, hydrobromic acid, sulfuric acid, etc.), carboxylic acids (e.g., acetic acid, trifluoroacetic acid, trichloroacetic acid, etc.), sulfonic acids (e.g., methanesulfonic acid, toluenesulfonic acid, etc.), Lewis acids (aluminum chloride, tin chloride, zinc bromide, etc.) and the like. If necessary, it may be used in a mixture of two or more. The amount of the acid varies depending on the kinds of the solvent and other reaction conditions, but it is usually about 0.1 molar equivalents or more, relative to 1 mole of Compound (I), and the

acid can be used as solvent.

[0117] The base is preferably an inorganic base (alkali metal hydroxides such as sodium hydroxide, potassium hydroxide, etc., alkali metal hydrogen carbonates such as sodium hydrogen carbonate, potassium hydrogen carbonate, etc., alkali metal carbonates such as sodium carbonate, potassium carbonate, etc., alkoxides such as sodium methoxide, sodium ethoxide, etc. and the like), or an organic base (amines such as trimethylamine, triethylamine, diisopropylethylamine, etc., cyclic amines such as pyridine, 4-dimethylaminopyridine, etc.) and the like, and preferably, sodium hydroxide, potassium hydroxide, sodium ethoxide and the like.

[0118] The amount of the base varies depending on the kinds of the solvent and other reaction conditions, but is usually in the order of about 0.1 to about 10 molar equivalents, preferably about 0.1 to about 5 molar equivalents, relative to 1 mole of Compound (I).

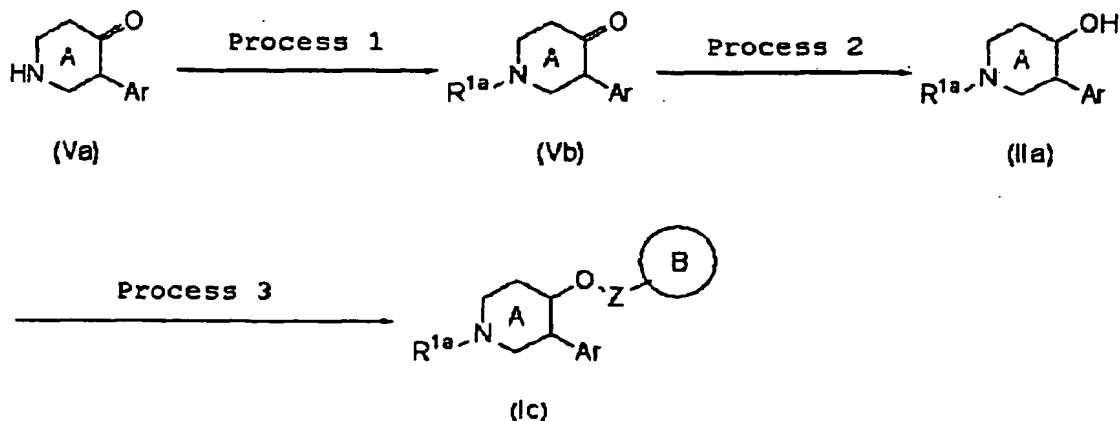
[0119] The solvent which has no adverse influence on the reaction includes, for example, alcohols such as methanol, ethanol, propanol, 2-propanol, butanol, isobutanol, tert-butanols; aromatic hydrocarbons such as benzene, toluene, xylene, etc.; aliphatic hydrocarbons such as hexane, heptane, etc.; halogenated hydrocarbons such as dichloromethane, chloroform, etc.; ethers such as diethyl ether, diisopropylether, tert-butylmethylether, tetrahydrofuran, dioxane, dimethoxyethane, etc.; nitriles such as acetonitrile, etc.; esters such as ethyl acetate, etc.; carboxylic acids such as acetic acid, etc.; amides such as dimethylformamide, dimethylacetamide, etc.; sulfoxides such as dimethylsulfoxide, etc.; water and the like. Such solvent may be used in a mixture of two or more at a suitable ratio.

[0120] The reaction temperature is for example, in the order of about -50°C to about 200°C, preferably about 0°C to about 100°C, and the reaction time varies depending on the kinds of Compound (I) or a salt thereof, the reaction temperature and the like, and it is for example, in the order of about 0.5 to about 100 hours, preferably about 0.5 to about 24 hours.

[0121] Dealkylation can be carried out by a known method, for example, the method described in Theodara W. Greene, Peter G. M. Wuts, "Protective Groups in Organic Synthesis, 3rd Ed.," (1999) Wiley-Interscience, and the like, or an analogous method thereto. For example, the dealkylation can be carried out by treatment with an acid, a base, ultraviolet radiation, a transition metal catalyst and the like, or by oxidation, reduction or acylation, followed by hydrolysis, etc., or a combination thereof can be used.

[Method B]

[0122]



wherein each symbol has the same meanings as defined above.

[0123] Among Compounds (Va) or (Vb) or a salt thereof, the compound wherein Ar is an aryl group or an aromatic heterocyclic group, each of which may be substituted, Compound (Vc), can be produced according to Method D below or, per se known methods, for example, the method described in JP-A-1981-118062. Among Compounds (Va) or (Vb) or a salt thereof, the compound wherein Ar is a benzhydryl group, Compound (Vd), can be produced by Method E below. In addition, among Compounds (Va) or (Vb) or a salt thereof, the compound wherein Ar is a benzyl group, Compound (Ve), can be produced according to the known methods, for example, the method described in Bioorganic & Medicinal Chemistry Letters, Vol. 4, pp. 525-530 (1994).

(Process 1)

[0124] The present process can be carried out by the same method described in Method A, a process to produce Compound (Vb) by reacting Compound (Va) or a salt thereof, and a compound represented by the formula:



wherein R^{1a} has the same meanings as defined above, a salt thereof or a reactive derivative thereof which is an alkylating agent or an acylating agent.

(Process 2)

[0125] The present process is a process of reducing Compound (Vb) to produce an alcohol compound (IIa).

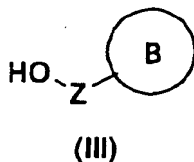
[0126] The present reaction can be carried out according to the known methods, usually in a solvent inert to the reaction, with using various reducing agents.

[0127] The reducing agent to be used includes, for example, metal hydride such as sodium borohydride, lithium borohydride, zinc borohydride, sodium cyanoborohydride, sodium triacetoxymethylborohydride, lithium cyanoborohydride, L-Selectride (lithium-tri-sec-butylborohydride), K-Selectride (potassium-tri-sec-butylborohydride), diisobutylaluminum hydride, lithium aluminum hydride, etc., preferably L-Selectride (lithium-tri-sec-butylborohydride), K-Selectride (potassium-tri-sec-butylborohydride), etc. The amount of the reducing agent is, for example, in the order of 1 to 50 molar equivalents, preferably 1 to 2 molar equivalents, relative to 1 mole of the substrate.

[0128] The solvent which is inert to the reaction includes, for example, aromatic hydrocarbons such as toluene, xylene, etc., aliphatic hydrocarbons such as heptane, hexane, etc., halogenated hydrocarbons such as chloroform, dichloromethane, etc., ethers such as diethyl ether, tetrahydrofuran, dioxane, etc., alcohols such as methanol, ethanol, 2-propanol, butanol, benzyl alcohol, etc., dimethylformamide, dimethylsulfoxide and the like. Such solvent may be used alone or in a mixture. The reaction temperature is usually in the order of about -80°C to 40°C, preferably about -50°C to 25°C, and the reaction time is usually in the order of 5 minutes to 48 hours, preferably 1 hour to 24 hours.

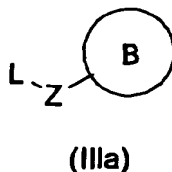
(Process 3)

[0129] The present process is a process to produce Compound (Ic) by reacting an alcohol compound (IIa) with a compound represented by the formula:



wherein each symbol has the same meanings as defined above, a salt thereof or a reactive derivative thereof which is an alkylating agent or an acylating agent.

[0130] The reactive derivative of the compound represented by Compound (III) or a salt thereof includes, for example, a compound represented by



wherein each symbol has the same meanings as defined above, (hereinafter, simply referred to as the reactive derivative) or a salt thereof.

[0131] The reaction using the above-mentioned reactive derivative as the alkylating agent, can be carried out by

subjecting the reactive derivative to a reaction usually in a solvent in the presence of base. The solvent includes, for example, alcohols such as methanol, ethanol, propanol, etc., hydrocarbons such as benzene, toluene, xylene, etc., halogenated hydrocarbons such as dichloromethane, chloroform, etc., ethers such as dimethoxyethane, dioxane, tetrahydrofuran, etc., ketones such as acetone, etc., nitriles such as acetonitrile, etc., amides such as N,N-dimethylformamide, etc., sulfoxides such as dimethylsulfoxide, etc., water and the like, which may be used in a suitable mixture. The base includes, for example, organic amines (e.g., alkylamines such as trimethylamine, triethylamine, diisopropylethylamine, N-methylmorpholine, 1,8-diazabicyclo[5.4.0]undeca-7-ene, etc., aromatic amines such as pyridine, N,N-dimethylaniline, etc.), alkali metal salts (e.g., sodium hydrogen carbonate, potassium hydrogen carbonate, sodium carbonate, potassium carbonate, sodium hydroxide, potassium hydroxide, etc.), metal hydrides (e.g., potassium hydride, sodium hydride, etc.), alkali metal alkoxides (e.g., sodium methoxide, sodium ethoxide, sodium t-butoxide, potassium t-butoxide, etc.) and the like, and preferably, alkali metal salts such as sodium hydroxide, etc., metal hydride such as sodium hydride, etc. and the like.

[0132] The amount of the base is, for example, in the order of about 1 to about 100 molar equivalents, preferably about 1 to about 10 molar equivalents, relative to 1 mole of the substrate.

[0133] The reactive derivative includes, for example, halides (e.g., chloride, bromide, iodide, etc.), sulfuric acid esters, or sulfonic acid esters (e.g., methanesulfonate, p-toluenesulfonate, benzenesulfonate, etc.) and the like, and particularly halides. The amount of the reactive derivative is, for example, in the order of 1 to 10 molar equivalents, preferably 1 to 5 molar equivalents, relative to 1 mole of the substrate.

[0134] If necessary, the reaction can be facilitated by adding an additive. Such additive includes, for example, iodides such as sodium iodide, potassium iodide, etc., a phase transfer catalyst such as tetra-n-butylammonium hydrogen sulfate, benzyltriethylammonium chloride, etc., and the amount is in the order of about 0.1 to 10 molar equivalents, preferably about 0.1 to 5 molar equivalents, relative to 1 mole of the substrate.

[0135] The reaction temperature is usually in the order of -10°C to 200°C, preferably about 0°C to 110°C, and the reaction time is usually in the order of 0.5 hour to 48 hours, preferably 0.5 hour to 16 hours.

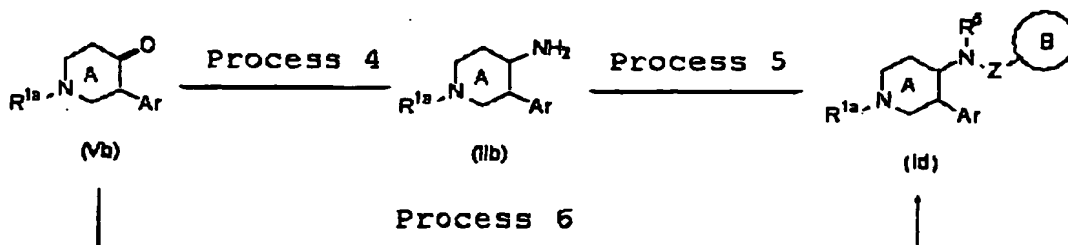
[0136] The reaction using the above-mentioned reactive derivative as the acylating agent, depends on the kinds of the reactive derivative or the substrate, but it can be usually carried out in a solvent. If necessary, a base may be added to facilitate the reaction. The solvent includes, for example, hydrocarbons such as benzene, toluene, etc., ethers such as ethyl ether, dioxane, tetrahydrofuran, etc., esters such as ethyl acetate, halogenated hydrocarbons such as chloroform, dichloromethane, etc., esters such as ethyl acetate, etc., amides such as N,N-dimethylformamide, etc., aromatic amines such as pyridine, etc., water and the like, which may be used in a suitable mixture. In addition, the base includes, for example, alkali metal hydroxides such as sodium hydroxide, potassium hydroxide, etc., hydrogen carbonates such as sodium hydrogen carbonate, potassium hydrogen carbonate, etc., carbonates such as sodium carbonate, potassium carbonate, etc., acetates such as sodium acetate, etc., tertiary amines such as trimethylamine, triethylamine, N-methylmorpholine, etc., aromatic amines such as pyridine, picoline, N,N-dimethylaniline, etc. and the like. The amount of the base is, for example, in the order of about 1 to about 100 molar equivalents, preferably about 1 to about 10 molar equivalents, relative to 1 mole of the substrate.

[0137] The acylating agent includes, for example, carboxylic acid or a reactive derivative thereof (e.g., acid halide, acid anhydride, mixed acid anhydride, active ester, etc.) and the like.

[0138] The amount of such acylating agent is usually 1 to 10 molar equivalents, preferably 1 to 3 molar equivalents, relative to 1 mole of the substrate. The reaction temperature is usually in the order of -10°C to 150°C, preferably about 0°C to 100°C, and the reaction time is usually in the order of 15 minutes to 24 hours, preferably 30 minutes to 16 hours.

[Method C]

[0139]



wherein R⁵ is an optionally substituted hydrocarbon group or an optionally substituted heterocyclic group, and

other symbols have the same meanings as defined above.

[0140] The "optionally substituted hydrocarbon group or the optionally substituted heterocyclic group" represented by R⁵ includes, for example, the same group as those referred to herein above for the foregoing group represented by R¹.

[0141] Compound (Vb) which is used as the starting compound in the present method, can be produced by the method described in Process 1 of Method B, etc.

(Process 4)

[0142] The present process is a process of converting a ketone of Compound (Vb) to imine or oxime, followed by reducing it to thus convert it into an amine compound (IIb).

[0143] Conversion of Compound (Vb) into imine or oxime can be carried out by using a known method, for example, by using various amines in a solvent inert to the reaction.

[0144] The amines include, for example, ammonias such as aqueous ammonia, ammonium chloride, ammonium acetate, etc. hydroxyamines such as hydroxyamine, O-methylhydroxyamine, O-benzylhydroxyamine, etc., and may be used as a salt form such as hydrochloride, sulfate, etc. or as an aqueous solution thereof. The amount of the amines is, for example, in the order of about 1 to 50 molar equivalents, preferably about 1 to 10 molar equivalents, relative to 1 mole of Compound (Vb).

[0145] The solvent which is inert to the reaction includes, for example, aromatic hydrocarbons such as toluene, xylene, etc., aliphatic hydrocarbons such as heptane, hexane, etc., halogenated hydrocarbons such as chloroform, dichloromethane, etc., ethers such as diethyl ether, tetrahydrofuran, dioxane, etc., alcohols such as methanol, ethanol, 2-propanol, butanol, benzyl alcohol, etc., nitriles such as acetonitrile, etc., dimethylformamide, dimethylsulfoxide and the like. Such solvent may be used in a mixture at a suitable ratio.

[0146] If necessary, the reaction can advantageously proceed by adding a catalyst. Such catalyst is preferably mineral acids (e.g., hydrochloric acid, hydrobromic acid, sulfuric acid, etc.), carboxylic acids (e.g., formic acid, acetic acid, propionic acid, trifluoroacetic acid, etc.), sulfonic acids (e.g., methanesulfonic acid, p-toluenesulfonic acid, etc.), Lewis acids (e.g., aluminum chloride, zinc chloride, zinc bromide, boron trifluoride, titanium chloride, etc.), acetate (e.g., sodium acetate, potassium acetate, etc.), and molecular sieves (e.g., molecular sieves 3A, 4A, 5A, etc.).

The amount of the catalyst is, for example, in the order of about 0.01 to 50 molar equivalents, preferably about 0.1 to 10 molar equivalents, relative to 1 mole of Compound (Vb).

[0147] The reaction temperature is usually in the order of about 0°C to 200°C, preferably about 20°C to 150°C, and the reaction time is usually in the order of 0.5 hour to 48 hours, preferably 0.5 hour to 24 hours.

[0148] The conversion of imine or oxime into an amine compound (IIb) in a solvent inert to the reaction, can be carried out by various reductions. Such reduction can be carried out by per se known methods, for example, a method using metal hydride or a method by catalytic hydrogenation.

[0149] The metal hydride as the reducing agent includes, for example, sodium borohydride, lithium borohydride, zinc borohydride, sodium cyanoborohydride, sodium triacetoxyborohydride, lithium cyanoborohydride, aluminum dibutylhydride, aluminum hydride, lithium aluminum hydride, a borane complex (a borane-THF complex, catechol borane, etc.) and the like. The metal hydride includes preferably sodium borohydride, sodium cyanoborohydride, sodium triacetoxyborohydride, etc. The amount of the reducing agent is, for example, in the order of 1 to 50 molar equivalents, preferably 1 to 10 molar equivalents, relative to 1 mole of the substrate. The reduction by the metal hydride is usually carried out in a solvent inert to the reaction. Such solvent includes, for example, aromatic hydrocarbons such as toluene, xylene, etc., aliphatic hydrocarbons such as heptane, hexane, etc., halogenated hydrocarbons such as chloroform, dichloromethane, etc., ethers such as diethyl ether, tetrahydrofuran, dioxane, etc., alcohols such as methanol, ethanol, 2-propanol, butanol, benzyl alcohol, etc., nitriles such as acetonitrile, etc., dimethylformamide, dimethylsulfoxide and the like. Such solvent may be used in a mixture at a suitable ratio. The reaction temperature is usually in the order of about -80°C to 80°C, preferably about -40°C to 40°C, and the reaction time is usually in the order of 5 minutes to 48 hours, preferably 1 hour to 24 hours.

[0150] The catalytic hydrogenation can be carried out under hydrogen atmosphere and in the presence of a catalyst. The catalyst to be used is preferably palladium compounds such as palladium carbon, palladium hydroxide, palladium oxide, etc., nickel compounds such as Raney-nickel, etc., platinum compounds such as platinum oxide, platinum carbon, etc., rhodium compounds such as rhodium acetate, etc. and the like, and the amount is in the order of about 0.001 to 1 equivalent, preferably about 0.01 to 0.5 equivalent. The catalytic hydrogenation is usually carried out in a solvent inert to the reaction. Such solvent includes, for example, alcohols such as methanol, ethanol, propanol, butanol, etc.; hydrocarbons such as benzene, toluene, xylene, etc.; halogenated hydrocarbons such as dichloromethane, chloroform, etc.; ethers such as diethyl ether, dioxane, tetrahydrofuran, etc.; esters such as ethyl acetate, etc.; amides such as N, N-dimethylformamide, etc.; carboxylic acids such as acetic acid, etc.; water, or a mixture thereof. The hydrogen pressure under which the reaction is carried out, is usually in the order of about 1 to 50 atm, preferably about 1 to 10 atm.

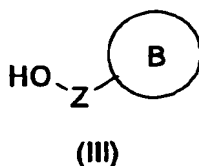
The reaction temperature is usually in the order of about 0°C to 150°C, preferably about 20°C to 100°C, and the reaction time is usually in the order of 5 minutes to 72 hours, preferably 0.5 hour to 40 hours.

[0151] In the present process, Compound (IIb) can be also produced directly from Compound (Vb) while carrying out the reactions of producing and reducing the above-mentioned imine or oxime at the same time, without isolating imine or oxime which is an intermediate. In this case, pH of the reaction mixture is preferably from about 4 to about 5.

(Process 5)

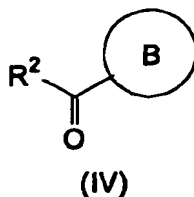
[0152] The present process is a process of alkylating, acylating or reductively alkylating an amine compound (IIb) to thus convert it into Compound (Id).

[0153] The alkylation or acylation can be carried out by reacting an amine compound (IIb) with a compound represented by the formula:



wherein each symbol has the same meanings as defined above, a salt thereof or a reactive derivative thereof which is an alkylating agent or an acylating agent, and can be carried out by the same method described in Process 3 of Method B.

[0154] The reductive alkylation can be carried out by per se known methods, for example, by reacting an amine compound (IIb) with a compound represented by the formula:



wherein R² is a hydrogen atom or an optionally substituted hydrocarbon group, and Ring B has the same meaning as defined above, a salt thereof or a reactive derivative thereof, and reducing the produced imine or iminium ion.

[0155] The "optionally substituted hydrocarbon group" represented by R² includes, for example, the same group as those referred to herein above for the foregoing group represented by R¹.

[0156] The reaction to produce imine or iminium ion is usually carried out in a solvent which has no adverse influence on the reaction. Such solvent includes, for example, aromatic hydrocarbons such as toluene, xylene, etc., aliphatic hydrocarbons such as heptane, hexane, etc., halogenated hydrocarbons such as chloroform, dichloromethane, etc., ethers such as diethyl ether, tetrahydrofuran, dioxane, etc., alcohols such as methanol, ethanol, 2-propanol, butanol, benzyl alcohol, etc., nitriles such as acetonitrile, etc., dimethylformamide, dimethylsulfoxide and the like. Such solvent may be used in a mixture at a suitable ratio.

[0157] If necessary, the reaction can advantageously proceed by adding a catalyst. Such catalyst is preferably mineral acids (e.g., hydrochloric acid, hydrobromic acid, sulfuric acid, etc.), carboxylic acids (e.g., formic acid, acetic acid, propionic acid, trifluoroacetic acid, etc.), sulfonic acids (e.g., methanesulfonic acid, p-toluenesulfonic acid, etc.), Lewis acids (e.g., aluminum chloride, zinc chloride, zinc bromide, boron trifluoride, titanium chloride, etc.), acetates (e.g., sodium acetate, potassium acetate, etc.), molecular sieves (molecular sieves 3A, 4A, 5A, etc) and the like. The amount of the catalyst is, for example, in the order of about 0.01 to 50 molar equivalents, preferably about 0.1 to 10 molar equivalents, relative to 1 mole of Compound (IIb).

[0158] The reaction temperature is usually in the order of about 0°C to 200°C, preferably about 20°C to 150°C, and the reaction time is usually in the order of 0.5 hour to 48 hours, preferably 0.5 hour to 24 hours.

[0159] The reduction of imine or iminium ion can be carried out by per se known methods, for example, a method using metal hydride or a method by catalytic hydrogenation.

[0160] The metal hydride as the reducing agent includes, for example, sodium borohydride, lithium borohydride, zinc

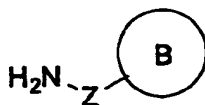
borohydride, sodium cyanoborohydride, sodium triacetoxyborohydride, lithium cyanoborohydride, aluminum dibutylhydride, aluminum hydride, lithium aluminum hydride, a borane complex (a borane-THF complex, catechol borane, etc.) and the like. The metal hydride includes preferably sodium borohydride, sodium cyanoborohydride, sodium triacetoxyborohydride, etc. The amount of the reducing agent is, for example, in the order of 1 to 50 molar equivalents, preferably 1 to 10 molar equivalents, relative to 1 mole of the substrate. In addition, the reaction solvent includes, for example, aromatic hydrocarbons such as toluene, xylene, etc., aliphatic hydrocarbons such as heptane, hexane, etc., halogenated hydrocarbons such as chloroform, dichloromethane, etc., ethers such as diethyl ether, tetrahydrofuran, dioxane, etc., alcohols such as methanol, ethanol, 2-propanol, butanol, benzyl alcohol, etc., nitriles such as acetonitrile, etc., dimethylformamide, dimethylsulfoxide and the like. Such solvent may be used in a mixture at a suitable ratio. The reaction temperature is usually in the order of about -80°C to 80°C, preferably about -40°C to 40°C, and the reaction time is usually in the order of 5 minutes to 48 hours, preferably 1 hour to 24 hours.

[0161] The catalytic hydrogenation can be carried out under hydrogen atmosphere and in the presence of a catalyst. The catalyst to be used is preferably palladium compounds such as palladium carbon, palladium hydroxide, palladium oxide, etc., nickel compounds such as Raney-nickel, etc., platinum compounds such as platinum oxide, platinum carbon, etc., rhodium compounds such as rhodium acetate, etc. and the like, and the amount is in the order of about 0.001 to 1 equivalent, preferably about 0.01 to 0.5 equivalent. The catalytic hydrogenation is usually carried out in a solvent inert to the reaction. Such solvent includes, for example, alcohols such as methanol, ethanol, propanol, butanol, etc.; hydrocarbons such as benzene, toluene, xylene, etc.; halogenated hydrocarbons such as dichloromethane, chloroform, etc.; ethers such as diethyl ether, dioxane, tetrahydrofuran, etc.; esters such as ethyl acetate, etc.; amides such as N, N-dimethylformamide, etc.; carboxylic acids such as acetic acid, etc.; water, or a mixture thereof. The hydrogen pressure under which the reaction is carried out, is usually in the order of about 1 to 50 atm, preferably about 1 to 10 atm. The reaction temperature is usually in the order of about 0°C to 150°C, preferably about 20°C to 100°C, and the reaction time is usually in the order of 5 minutes to 72 hours, preferably 0.5 hour to 40 hours.

[0162] In the present process, Compound (Id) can be also produced directly from Compound (Iib) while carrying out the reactions to produce imine or iminium ion and to reduce the products at the same time, without isolating imine or iminium ion which is an intermediate. In this case, pH of the reaction mixture is preferably from about 4 to about 5.

(Process 6)

[0163] The present reaction is a process of reductively aminating Compound (Vb) to thus convert it into Compound (Id). The present reaction can be carried out by the known methods, for example, by reacting Compound (Vb) with a compound represented by the formula:



(VII)

wherein each symbol has the same meanings as defined above, a salt thereof or a reactive derivative thereof, and reducing the produced imine or iminium ion.

[0164] The reaction to produce imine or iminium ion and the reduction can be carried out by the same method described in the reductive amination of Process 5.

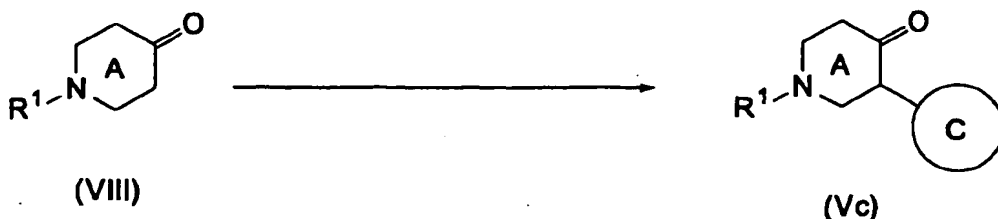
[0165] In the present process, Compound (Id) can be also produced directly from Compound (Vb) while carrying out the reaction to produce imine or iminium ion and to reduce the products at the same time, without isolating imine or iminium ion which is an intermediate. In this case, pH of the reaction mixture is preferably from about 4 to about 5.

[0166] Compound (I) obtained by the methods described in the above-mentioned Method A, Method B and Method C, can be further subjected to known reactions including condensation reactions such as various acylation, alkylation, or oxidation, reduction, etc. to prepare a further derivative. Such reactions can be carried out according to the known methods.

[0167] Among Compounds (Va) or (Vb) which is used as the starting compound in Method B, the compound wherein Ar is an aryl group or an aromatic heterocyclic group, each of which may be substituted, Compound (Vc), can be produced, for example, by Method D below.

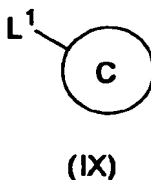
[Method D]

[0168]



wherein Ring C is an aryl group or an aromatic heterocyclic group, each of which may be substituted, and other symbols have the same meanings as defined above.

[0169] The present reaction is a reaction of arylating ketone compound (VIII) to thus convert it into Compound (Vc). The present reaction can be carried out by the known methods, for example, by reacting Compound (VIII) with a compound represented by the formula:



wherein L¹ is a leaving group, and Ring C has the same meaning as defined above, or a salt thereof in the presence of a base and a transition metal catalyst.

[0170] "The aryl group or the aromatic heterocyclic group, each of which may be substituted" represented by Ring C includes, for example, the same group as those referred to herein above for the foregoing group represented by Ar.

[0171] Compound (VIII) which is the starting compound is commercially available, or can be produced by known methods.

[0172] The leaving group represented by L¹ in Compound (IX) includes, for example, a halogen atom (e.g., a chlorine atom, a bromine atom, an iodine atom, etc.), a substituted sulfonyloxy group (e.g., an optionally substituted C₁₋₆ alkylsulfonyloxy group such as methanesulfonyloxy, ethanesulfonyloxy, trifluoromethanesulfonyloxy, etc.; a C₆₋₁₄ arylsulfonyloxy group such as benzenesulfonyloxy, p-toluenesulfonyloxy, etc.; a C₇₋₁₆ aralkylsulfonyloxy group such as benzylsulfonyloxy group, etc.), acyloxy (acetoxo, benzyloxy, etc.) and the like, and preferably, a bromine atom, an iodine atom, a trifluoromethanesulfonyloxy group and the like.

[0173] The base to be used includes, for example, organic amines (e.g., alkylamines such as trimethylamine, triethylamine, diisopropylethylamine, N-methylmorpholine, 1,8-diazabicyclo[5.4.0]undeca-7-ene, etc., aromatic amines such as pyridine, N,N-dimethylaniline, etc.), alkali metal salts (e.g., sodium hydrogen carbonate, potassium hydrogen carbonate, sodium carbonate, potassium carbonate, cesium carbonate, sodium hydroxide, potassium hydroxide, etc.), metal hydrides (e.g., potassium hydride, sodium hydride, etc.), alkali metal alkoxides (e.g., sodium methoxide, sodium ethoxide, sodium t-butoxide, potassium t-butoxide, etc.), alkali disilazides (e.g., lithium disilazide, sodium disilazide, potassium disilazide, etc.) and the like, and preferably, alkali metal salts such as cesium carbonate, alkali metal alkoxides such as potassium t-butoxide, etc. and the like. The amount of Compound (IX) is, for example, in the order of about 1 to about 10 molar equivalents, preferably about 1 to about 5 molar equivalents, relative to 1 mole of the substrate. The amount of the base is, for example, in the order of about 1 to about 100 molar equivalents, preferably about 1 to about 10 molar equivalents, relative to 1 mole of the substrate.

[0174] The transition metal catalyst includes, for example, a palladium catalyst such as palladium acetate, palladium chloride, palladium tetrakis(triphenyl)phosphine; a nickel catalyst such as nickel chloride, etc. and the like. If necessary, a ligand such as triphenylphosphine, tri-t-butylphosphine, etc. can be used.

[0175] The amount of the catalyst varies depending on the kinds of the catalyst, but it is usually in the order of about 0.0001 to about 1 molar equivalent, preferably about 0.01 to about 0.5 molar equivalents, relative to 1 mole of Compound (VIII). The amount of the ligand is usually in the order of about 0.0001 to about 4 molar equivalents, preferably

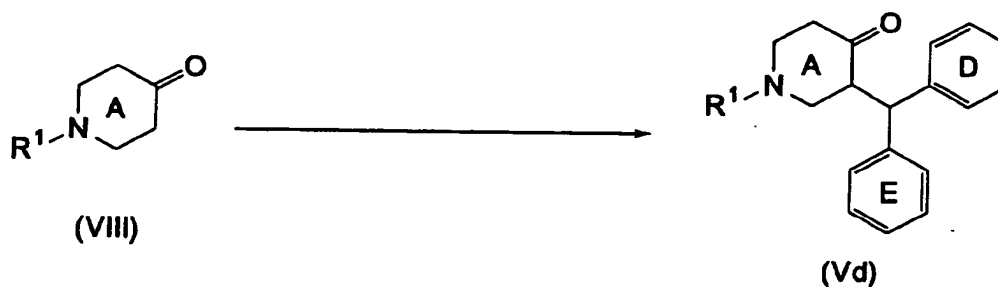
about 0.01 to about 2 molar equivalents, relative to 1 mole of Compound (VIII).

[0176] The reaction condition (a solvent, temperature, time, etc.) varies depending on the kinds of Compound (VIII), Compound (IX), the base and the catalyst to be used. For example, the reaction is usually carried out in a solvent inert to the reaction. The solvent includes, for example, hydrocarbons such as benzene, toluene, xylene, etc.; halogenated hydrocarbons such as dichloromethane, chloroform, etc.; nitriles such as acetonitrile, etc.; ethers such as dimethoxyethane, tetrahydrofuran, etc.; alcohols such as methanol, ethanol, etc.; a non-protonic polar solvent such as dimethylformamide, dimethylsulfoxides, hexamethylphosphoramide, etc.; water, or a mixture thereof.

[0177] Among Compounds (Va) or (Vb) which is used as the starting compound in Method B, the compound wherein Ar is an optionally substituted benzhydryl group, Compound (Vd), can be produced, for example, by Method E below.

[Method E]

[0178]

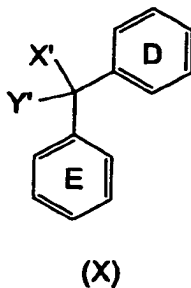


wherein Ring D and Ring E are an optionally substituted benzene ring, respectively and other symbols have the same meanings as defined above.

[0179] The "substituent" of the "an optionally substituted benzene ring, respectively" represented by Ring D and Ring E includes, for example, the same group as those referred to herein above for the foregoing "substituent" in "the aryl group, the aralkyl group or the aromatic heterocyclic group, each of which may be substituted" represented by Ar.

[0180] Compound (VIII), the starting compound, is commercially available, or can be produced by known methods.

[0181] The present reaction is a process of producing Compound (Vd) by reacting Compound (VIII) with Compound (X) represented by the formula:



wherein X' and Y' are respectively a hydrogen atom, a hydroxy group or a halogen atom, and other symbols have the same meanings as defined above, provided that when X' is a hydrogen atom, Y' is a hydroxy group or a halogen atom, and when X' is a halogen atom, Y' is a halogen atom, or a salt thereof in the presence of trialkylsilyl triflate.

[0182] The trialkylsilyl triflate is not particularly limited, but preferably trimethylsilyltrifluoromethane sulfonate. The amount of the trialkylsilyl triflate is 1 to 10 molar equivalents, preferably 1 to 4 molar equivalents, relative to 1 mole of Compound (VIII) or a salt thereof.

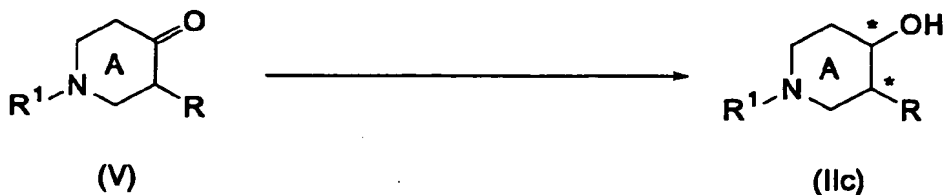
[0183] If necessary, the reaction can advantageously proceed by adding an acid catalyst. The acid catalyst includes mineral acid, Lewis acid, etc., and is not particularly limited, but preferably, a zinc salt such as zinc chloride, zinc bromide, zinc iodide, etc., an aluminum salt such as aluminum chloride, etc., an iron salt such as iron chloride, etc.,

halogenated boron such as boron trifluoride, etc., and more preferably, a zinc salt such as zinc bromide, etc. The amount of the catalyst is 0.001 to 1 molar equivalents, preferably 0.1 to 1 molar equivalents, relative to 1 mole of Compound (VIII) or a salt thereof. When a benzhydrol derivative (when X' is a hydrogen atom and Y' is a hydroxy group in Compound (X)) is used as Compound (X), addition of a catalyst is not particularly needed, but a catalyst may be added depending on the case. The benzhydrol derivative used in the present process is a known one or, can be produced easily according to known methods [for example, Chem. Ber. 103, 2041-2051 (1970)] from the corresponding benzophenone derivative. The amount of Compound (X) is 1 to 5 molar equivalents, preferably 1 to 3 molar equivalents, relative to 1 mole of Compound (VIII) or a salt thereof. The reaction is usually carried out in a solvent inert to the reaction. The solvent includes, for example, halogenated hydrocarbons such as dichloromethane, dichloroethane, chloroform, etc.; nitriles such as acetonitrile, etc.; esters such as ethyl acetate, etc.; ethers such as dimethoxyethane, tetrahydrofuran, dioxane, etc.; hydrocarbons such as benzene, toluene, etc.; amides such as dimethylformamide, hexamethylphosphoramide, etc.; a non-protonic solvent including sulfoxides such as dimethylsulfoxides, etc., and preferably, halogenated hydrocarbons such as dichloromethane, dichloroethane, etc. The reaction temperature is usually from -78°C to a boiling point of the solvent, particularly from -50°C to room temperature. The reaction time varies depending on the kinds of Compound (VIII) or a salt thereof, the kinds of Compound (X), the reaction temperature and other reaction conditions, but it is usually 1 to 96 hours, preferably 1 to 16 hours.

[0184] An optically active form of Compound (I) or a salt thereof of the present invention can be produced by reacting an alcohol compound (IIc) or an amine compound (IId) obtained by Method F or Method G below, according to the method described in the above-mentioned Methods A to C.

[Method F]

[0185]



wherein R is an optionally substituted hydrocarbon group or an optionally substituted heterocyclic group, * is a chiral center, and other symbols have the same meanings as defined above. OH and R have a cis configuration relationship.

[0186] "The optionally substituted hydrocarbon group or the optionally substituted heterocyclic group" represented by R includes, for example, the same group as those referred to herein above for the foregoing group represented by R¹.

[0187] The optically active alcohol compound (IIc) in which OH and R are in cis configuration can be obtained by hydrogenating a ketone compound (V) in the presence of an optically active ruthenium-phosphine-amine complex and a base in the present reaction.

[0188] Compound (V) used as a starting material in the present reaction can be produced by the above-mentioned Method D, Method E, or according to a known method.

[0189] The optically active ruthenium-phosphine-amine complex used in the present reaction can be produced by reacting phosphine or a salt thereof, amine or a salt thereof, and a ruthenium complex, according to the known methods, for example, the method described in J. Am. Chem. Soc., 120, 13529 (1998); Angew. Chem. Int. Ed., 37, 1703 (1998); JP-A-11-189600 and the like, or an analogous method thereto. Herein, at least one of phosphine or amine is preferably in optically active form. The time and sequence of adding phosphine, amine and a ruthenium complex to the reaction system in the present reaction are not particularly limited, and these may be added to the reaction system at the same time, or separately at timed intervals. Thus obtained optically active ruthenium-phosphine-amine complex is separated by known means, for example, concentration, solvent extraction, fractional distillation, crystallization, recrystallization, chromatography, etc., and is then used in the production method of the present invention, preferably after purification.

[0190] The phosphine to be used includes, for example, trimethylphosphine, triethylphosphine, tributylphosphine, triphenylphosphine, tricyclohexylphosphine, tri(p-tolyl)phosphine, diphenylmethylphosphine, dimethylphenylphosphine, bis(diphenylphosphino)methane, bis(diphenylphosphino)ethane, bis(diphenylphosphino)propane, bis(diphenylphosphino)butane, bis(dimethylphosphino)ethane, bis(dimethylphosphino)propane, 2,2'-bis-(diphenylphosphino)-1,1'-binaphthyl (hereinafter, briefly referred to as BINAP), a BINAP derivative having (a) substituent(s) such as an alkyl

group, an aryl group, etc. on the naphthyl ring of BINAP (2,2'-bis-(diphenylphosphino)-6,6'-dimethyl-1,1'-binaphthyl), a BINAP derivative in which the naphthyl ring of BINAP is partially hydrogenated, such as H8 BINAP (2,2'-bis-(diphenylphosphino)-5,6,7,8,5',6',7',8'-octahydro-1,1'-binaphthyl), a BINAP derivative having 1 to 5 alkyl group substituents on one benzene ring on the phosphorus atom of BINAP, such as 2,2'-bis-(di-p-tolylphosphino)-1,1'-binaphthyl (Tol-BINAP), 2,2'-bis[bis(3,5-dimethylphenyl)phosphino]-1,1'-binaphthyl (Xyl-BINAP), 2,2'-bis(dicyclohexylphosphino)-6,6'-dimethyl-1,1'-biphenyl (BICHEP), 2,3-bis(diphenylphosphino)butane (CHIRAPHOS), 1-cyclohexyl-1,2-bis(diphenylphosphino)ethane (CYCPHOS), 1,2-bis[(o-methoxyphenyl)phenylphosphino]ethane (DIPAMP), 1,2-bis(diphenylphosphino)propane (PROPHOS), 2,4-bis(diphenylphosphino)pentane (SKEWPHOS), 1-[1',2-bis(diphenylphosphino)ferrocenyl]ethyldiamine (BPPFA), 1-substituted-3,4-bis-(diphenylphosphino)pyrrolidine (DEGPHOS), 2,3-O-isopropyliden-2,3-dihydroxy-1,4-bis(diphenylphosphino)butane (DIOP), (substituted-1,2-bis(phosphorano)benzene) (DuPHOS), 5,6-bis-diphenylphosphino-2-norbornene (NORPHOS), N,N'-bis (diphenylphosphino)-N,N'-bis (1-phenylethyl) ethylenediamine (PNNP) and the like.

[0191] The phosphine is preferably optically active phosphine, more preferably, optically active phosphine such as BINAP, H8 BINAP, Tol-BINAP, Xyl-BINAP, BICHEP, CHIRAPHOS, CYCPHOS, DIPAMP, PROPHOS, SKEWPHOS, etc. and particularly BINAP, Xyl-BINAP and the like.

[0192] The amine to be used includes, for example, monoamines such as methylamine, ethylamine, propylamine, butylamine, pentylamine, hexylamine, cyclopentylamine, cyclohexylamine, benzylamine, dimethylamine, diethylamine, dipropylamine, dihexylamine, dicyclopentylamine, dicyclohexylamine, dibenzylamine, diphenylamine, phenylethylamine, piperidine, piperazine, phenylethylamine, naphthylethylamine, cyclohexylethylamine, cycloheptylethylamine, etc., diamines such as methylenediamine, ethylenediamine, 1,2-diaminopropane, 1,3-diaminopropane, 1,4-diaminobutane, 2,3-diaminobutane, 1,2-cyclopentanedi-amine, 1,2-cyclohexanedi-amine, N-methylethylenediamine, N,N'-dimethylethylenediamine, o-phenylenediamine, p-phenylenediamine, 1,2-diphenylethylenediamine (hereinafter, briefly referred to as DPEN), 1,2-cyclohexanedi-amine, 1,2-cycloheptanedi-amine, 2,3-dimethylbutanedi-amine, 1-methyl-2,2-diphenylethylenediamine, 1-isobutyl-2,2-diphenylethylenediamine, 1-isopropyl-2,2-diphenylethylenediamine, 1-methyl-2,2-bis(p-methoxyphenyl)ethylenediamine, 1-isobutyl-2,2-bis(p-methoxyphenyl)ethylenediamine, 1-isopropyl-2,2-bis(p-methoxyphenyl)ethylenediamine (hereinafter, briefly referred to as DAIPEN), 1-benzyl-2,2-bis(p-methoxyphenyl)ethylenediamine, 1-methyl-2,2-dinaphthylethylenediamine, 1-isobutyl-2,2-dinaphthylethylenediamine, 1-isopropyl-2,2-dinaphthylethylenediamine, a propanedi-amine derivative, a butanedi-amine derivative, a phenylenediamine derivative, a cyclohexanedi-amine derivative, etc. and the like.

[0193] The amine is preferably optically active amine, more preferably, optically active amine such as phenylethylamine, naphthylethylamine, cyclohexylethylamine, cycloheptylethylamine, 1,2-diphenylethylenediamine, 1,2-cyclohexanedi-amine, 1,2-cycloheptanedi-amine, 2,3-dimethylbutanedi-amine, 1-methyl-2,2-diphenylethylenediamine, 1-isobutyl-2,2-diphenylethylenediamine, 1-isopropyl-2,2-diphenylethylenediamine, 1-methyl-2,2-bis(p-methoxyphenyl)ethylenediamine, 1-isobutyl-2,2-bis(p-methoxyphenyl)ethylenediamine, 1-isopropyl-2,2-bis(p-methoxyphenyl)ethylenediamine, 1-benzyl-2,2-bis(p-methoxyphenyl)ethylenediamine, 1-methyl-2,2-dinaphthylethylenediamine, 1-isobutyl-2,2-dinaphthylethylenediamine, 1-isopropyl-2,2-dinaphthylethylenediamine, etc. and particularly 1,2-diphenylethylenediamine, 1-isopropyl-2,2-bis(p-methoxyphenyl)ethylenediamine and the like.

[0194] The ruthenium complex includes, for example, an inorganic ruthenium compound such as ruthenium chloride (III) hydrate, ruthenium bromide (III) hydrate, ruthenium iodide (III) hydrate, etc.; a ruthenium compound coordinated with diene such as [a polynuclear form of ruthenium(norbornadiene) dichloride], [a polynuclear form of ruthenium(cyclooctadiene) dichloride], bis(methylallyl)ruthenium(cyclooctadiene), etc.; a ruthenium complex coordinated with an aromatic compound such as [a dinuclear form of ruthenium(benzene) dichloride], [a dinuclear form of ruthenium(p-cymene) dichloride], [a dinuclear form of ruthenium(trimethylbenzene) dichloride], [a dinuclear form of ruthenium(hexamethylbenzene) dichloride], etc.; a ruthenium complex coordinated with phosphine such as dichlorotris(triphenylphosphine)ruthenium, etc. and the like.

[0195] The optically active ruthenium-phosphine-amine complex obtained by combination of the exemplified phosphine, amine and ruthenium complex can be used in the present reaction. For example,

$\text{RuCl}_2[(\text{S})\text{-BINAP}][(\text{S},\text{S})\text{-DPEN}]$,

$\text{RuCl}_2[(\text{R})\text{-BINAP}][(\text{R},\text{R})\text{-DPEN}]$,

$\text{RuCl}_2[(\text{S})\text{-xylBINAP}][(\text{S})\text{-DAIPEN}]$,

$\text{RuCl}_2[(\text{R})\text{-xylBINAP}][(\text{R})\text{-DAIPEN}]$ and the like are particularly preferred.

[0196] The amount of the optically active ruthenium-phosphine-amine complex varies depending on the reaction vessel, the reaction type and the like, but it is for example, 0.0001 to 0.1 molar equivalents, preferably 0.0001 to 0.02 molar equivalents, relative to 1 mole of a ketone compound (V) which is the reaction substrate.

[0197] The base used in the present process includes, for example, alkali metal hydroxides such as potassium hydroxide, sodium hydroxide, cesium hydroxide, etc.; alkali metal alkoxides such as lithium methoxide, sodium methoxide, potassium methoxide, lithium ethoxide, sodium ethoxide, potassium ethoxide, lithium propoxide, sodium propoxide, potassium propoxide, lithium isopropoxide, sodium isopropoxide, potassium isopropoxide, potassium tert-butoxide,

etc.; alkylthio alkali metals such as sodium thiomethoxide, etc. and the like. The alkali metal hydroxides and the alkali metal alkoxides are preferably sodium hydroxide, potassium hydroxide, potassium isopropoxide, potassium tert-butoxide and the like, and particularly potassium hydroxide and potassium tert-butoxide.

[0198] The amount of the base is, for example, 0.5 to 100 molar equivalents, preferably 2 to 40 molar equivalents, relative to 1 mole of the optically active ruthenium-phosphine-amine complex.

[0199] In the present process, hydrogenation of the compound represented by the ketone compound (V) or a salt thereof is usually carried out in a suitable solvent.

[0200] Such solvent is not particularly limited if it has no adverse influence on the reaction and solubilizes the starting compounds and the catalyst, and it includes, for example, aromatic hydrocarbons such as toluene, xylene, etc.; aliphatic hydrocarbons such as heptane, hexane, etc.; halogenated hydrocarbons such as methylene chloride, etc.; ethers such as diethyl ether, tetrahydrofuran, etc.; alcohols such as methanol, ethanol, 2-propanol, butanol, benzyl alcohol, etc.; nitriles such as acetonitrile, etc.; dimethylformamide, dimethylsulfoxide and the like. Such solvent may be used in a mixture at a suitable ratio. The solvent is preferably alcohol, particularly 2-propanol.

[0201] The above-mentioned solvent is preferably used after drying and degassing.

[0202] The amount of the solvent is suitably determined by solubility of Compound (V) and the like. For example, if alcohol (preferably 2-propanol) is used as the solvent, the reaction can be carried out from in the nearly solventless state to in a solvent in an amount of 100 times by weight or more, preferably 2 to 50 times by weight as much as Compound (V).

[0203] The hydrogenation can be carried out in a batch mode or in a continuous mode. In addition, the hydrogenation is carried out in the presence of hydrogen, and the hydrogen pressure is, for example, 1 to 200 atm, preferably 1 to 10 atm.

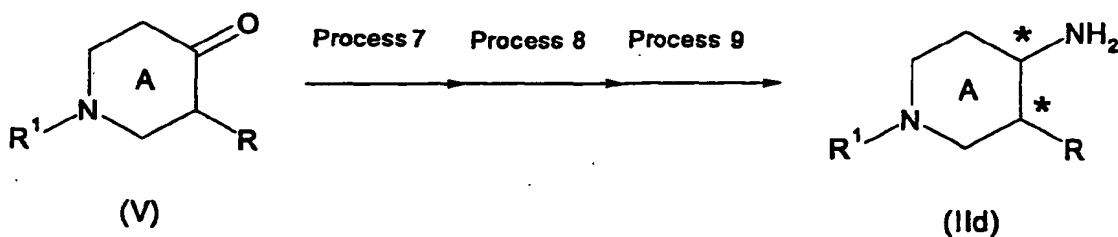
[0204] The reaction temperature is preferably -30 to 100°C, further preferably 10 to 50°C, particularly preferably 20 to 50°C.

[0205] The reaction time is preferably 0.5 to 48 hours, further preferably 2 to 24 hours.

[0206] Thus obtained optically active alcohol compound (IIc) is subjected to the reactions described in the above-mentioned Methods A to C, to thus produce an optically active Compound (I) or a salt thereof.

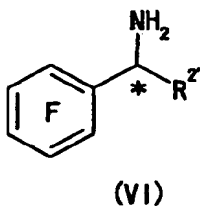
[Method G]

[0207]



wherein * is a chiral center, and other symbols have the same meanings as defined above. NH₂ and R have a cis configuration relationship.

[0208] In the present method, the ketone compound (V) is subjected to condensation with an optically active compound represented by the formula:



wherein Ring F is an optionally substituted, optionally fused benzene ring, R² is an optionally substituted hydrocarbon group, and other symbols have the same meanings as defined above, or a salt thereof, followed by hydrogen-

ation and further hydrogenolysis, to give an optically active amine compound (IId) in which NH_2 and R are in cis configuration. Compound (V) used as the starting compound in the present method can be produced by the method described in the above-mentioned Method D and Method E, or according to a known method.

[0209] The "substituent" of the "optionally substituted, optionally fused benzene ring" represented by Ring F includes, for example, the same group as those referred to herein above for the foregoing "substituent" in the "optionally substituted aromatic ring" represented by Ring B. In addition, the benzene ring may be fused with the benzene ring or the "heterocyclic ring" represented by R^1 .

[0210] The "optionally substituted hydrocarbon group" represented by R^2 , includes, for example, the same group as those referred to herein above for the foregoing group represented by R^1 .

(Process 7)

[0211] The present process is a process of reacting Compound (V) with optically active amine (VI) to thus convert it into imine. The conversion of Compound (V) into imine can be carried out using the known methods, for example, by using optically active amine (VI), and if necessary, using a catalyst in a solvent inert to the reaction.

[0212] The optically active amine (VI) used in the present process is an optionally substituted, optically active 1-phenylethylamine derivative, for example, 1-phenylethylamine, 1-phenylpropylamine, 1-naphthylethylamine, 2-naphthylethylamine, 1-(4-tolyl)ethylamine and the like, and particularly preferably optically active 1-phenylethylamine. A desired isomer can be obtained selectively among the optically active forms represented by the formula (IId) by suitably selecting any optical isomer of (R)-configuration or (S)-configuration. The amount of the optically active amine (VI) is in the order of about 0.9 to about 10 molar equivalents, preferably about 1 to about 2 molar equivalents, relative to 1 mole of Compound (V).

[0213] The solvent used in the present process is not particularly limited if it has no adverse influence on the reaction and solubilizes the starting compounds, for example, aromatic hydrocarbons such as toluene, xylene, etc., aliphatic hydrocarbons such as heptane, hexane, etc., halogenated hydrocarbons such as chloroform, dichloromethane, etc., ethers such as diethyl ether, tetrahydrofuran, dioxane, etc., alcohols such as methanol, ethanol, 2-propanol, butanol, benzyl alcohol, etc., nitriles such as acetonitrile, etc., dimethylformamide, dimethylsulfoxide and the like. Such solvent may be used in a mixture at a suitable ratio. The solvent is preferably toluene. The amount of the solvent is suitably determined by solubility of Compounds (V) and (VI), etc. The reaction can be carried out from in the nearly solventless state, to in a solvent in an amount of 100 times by weight or more, preferably 5 to 30 times by weight as much as Compound (V).

[0214] If necessary, the reaction can advantageously proceed by adding a catalyst. Such catalyst includes, for example, mineral acids (e.g., hydrochloric acid, hydrobromic acid, sulfuric acid, etc.), carboxylic acids (e.g., formic acid, acetic acid, propionic acid, trifluoroacetic acid, etc.), sulfonic acids (e.g., methanesulfonic acid, p-toluenesulfonic acid, etc.), Lewis acids (e.g., aluminum chloride, zinc chloride, zinc bromide, boron trifluoride, titanium chloride, etc.), acetates (e.g., sodium acetate, potassium acetate, etc.) and molecular sieves (molecular sieves 3A, 4A, 5A, etc.), preferably Lewis acid, and particularly aluminum chloride. The amount of the catalyst is, for example, in the order of about 0.01 to 10 molar equivalents, preferably about 0.02 to 1 molar equivalents, relative to 1 mole of Compound (V).

[0215] The reaction temperature varies depending on the solvent to be used, and is in the order of usually about 30°C to 200°C , preferably about 50°C to 150°C , and the reaction time is usually in the order of 0.1 hour to 48 hours, preferably 0.1 hour to 24 hours.

[0216] The reaction can be facilitated in the present reaction by the known operation of azeotropic dehydration.

(Process 8)

[0217] The present process is a process of hydrogenating the imine obtained in Process 7 in a solvent inert to the reaction by various reductions. Such reduction can be carried out by the known methods, for example, a method using metal hydride or a method by catalytic hydrogenation.

[0218] The metal hydride as the reducing agent includes, for example, sodium borohydride, lithium borohydride, zinc borohydride, sodium cyanoborohydride, sodium triacetoxyborohydride, lithium cyanoborohydride, aluminum dibutylhydride, aluminum hydride, lithium aluminum hydride, a borane complex (a borane-THF complex, catechol borane, etc.) and the like, and preferably, sodium borohydride, sodium cyanoborohydride, sodium triacetoxyborohydride, etc. The amount of the reducing agent is, for example, in the order of 1 to 50 molar equivalents, preferably 1 to 10 molar equivalents, relative to 1 mole of the substrate. The solvent used herein is not particularly limited if it has no adverse influence on the reaction and solubilizes the starting compounds, for example, aromatic hydrocarbons such as toluene, xylene, etc., aliphatic hydrocarbons such as heptane, hexane, etc., halogenated hydrocarbons such as chloroform, dichloromethane, etc., ethers such as diethyl ether, tetrahydrofuran, dioxane, etc., alcohols such as methanol, ethanol, 2-propanol, butanol, benzyl alcohol, etc., nitriles such as acetonitrile, etc., dimethylformamide, dimethylsulfoxide and

the like. Such solvent may be used in a mixture at a suitable ratio. The amount of the solvent is from nearly zero, to 100 times by weight or more, preferably 5 to 30 times by weight as much as the substrate. The reaction temperature is usually in the order of about -80°C to 200°C, preferably about -50°C to 100°C, and the reaction time is usually in the order of 5 minutes to 72 hours, preferably 0.5 hour to 12 hours.

[0219] The catalytic hydrogenation can be carried out under hydrogen atmosphere and in the presence of a catalyst. The catalyst to be used includes, for example, palladium compounds such as palladium carbon, palladium hydroxide carbon, palladium oxide, etc., nickel compounds such as Raney-nickel, etc., platinum compounds such as platinum oxide, platinum carbon, etc., rhodium compounds such as rhodium acetate, etc. and the like, preferably, a heterogeneous supported nickel catalyst, and particularly Raney nickel.

The amount is in the order of about 0.001 to 10 equivalents, preferably about 0.1 to 5 equivalents. The catalytic hydrogenation is usually carried out in a solvent inert to the reaction. Such solvent includes, for example, alcohols such as methanol, ethanol, propanol, butanol, benzylalcohol, etc.; aliphatic hydrocarbons such as heptane, hexane, etc.; aromatic hydrocarbons such as benzene, toluene, xylene, etc.; halogenated hydrocarbons such as dichloromethane, chloroform, etc.; ethers such as diethyl ether, dimethoxyethane, dioxane, tetrahydrofuran, etc.; esters such as ethyl acetate, etc.; amides such as N,N-dimethylformamide, etc.; carboxylic acids such as acetic acid, etc.; water, or a mixture thereof, preferably alcohols, and particularly ethanol. The amount of the solvent is from nearly zero, to preferably 100 times by weight, preferably 5 to 30 times by weight as much as the substrate. The hydrogenation can be carried out in a batch mode or in a continuous mode. The hydrogen pressure under which the reaction is carried out, is usually in the order of about 0.1 to 5 MPa, preferably about 0.1 to 1 MPa. The reaction temperature is usually in the order of about 0°C to 150°C, preferably about 20°C to 50°C, and the reaction time is usually in the order of 5 minutes to 120 hours.

(Process 9)

[0220] The present process is a process of hydrogenolysis of the compound obtained in Process 8 to obtain an optically active amine compound (IIId) in which NH_2 and R are in cis configuration. Such hydrogenolysis can be carried out by the known methods, for example, a method by catalytic hydrogenation.

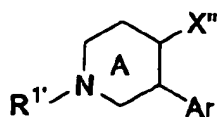
[0221] The catalytic hydrogenation can be carried out in the presence of a catalyst under hydrogen atmosphere. The catalyst to be used includes, for example, a heterogeneous catalyst in which transition metal is supported on a carrier.

The heterogeneous catalyst includes, for example, palladium compounds such as palladium carbon, palladium hydroxide carbon, palladium oxide, etc., nickel compounds such as Raney-nickel, etc., platinum compounds such as platinum oxide, platinum carbon, etc., rhodium compounds such as rhodium acetate, etc. and the like. Such catalyst is preferably a heterogeneous, palladium-supported catalyst, particularly palladium carbon and palladium hydroxide carbon. The amount is in the order of about 0.0001 to 1 equivalent, preferably about 0.001 to 0.5 equivalent. The catalytic hydrogenation is usually carried out in a solvent inert to the reaction. Such solvent includes, for example, alcohols such as methanol, ethanol, propanol, butanol, benzyl alcohol, etc.; aliphatic hydrocarbons such as heptane, hexane, etc.; aromatic hydrocarbons such as benzene, toluene, xylene, etc.; halogenated hydrocarbons such as dichloromethane, chloroform, etc.; ethers such as diethyl ether, dimethoxyethane, dioxane, tetrahydrofuran, etc.; esters such as ethyl acetate, etc.; nitriles such as acetonitrile, etc.; amides such as N,N-dimethylformamide, etc.; carboxylic acids such as acetic acid, etc.; water, or a mixture thereof, preferably alcohols, and particularly ethanol. The amount of the solvent is from nearly zero, to 100 times by weight or more, preferably 5 to 30 times by weight part as much as the substrate. The hydrogenation can be carried out in a batch mode or in a continuous mode. The hydrogen pressure under which the reaction is carried out, is for example, usually in the order of about 0.1 to 5 MPa, preferably about 0.1 to 1 MPa. The reaction temperature is usually in the order of about 0°C to 200°C, preferably about 20°C to 60°C, and the reaction time is usually in the order of 5 minutes to 120 hours.

[0222] In the present method, Compound (IIId) can be also produced directly from Compound (V) while carrying out the reaction to produce the above-mentioned imine and to reduce the products at the same time, without isolating the compound obtained in Process 7 or Process 8 which is an intermediate.

[0223] Thus obtained optically active amine compound (IIId) is subjected to the reactions described in Methods A to C to produce an optically active Compound (I) or a salt thereof.

[0224] Among the starting compounds of Compound (I), the compound represented by the formula:



(II)

wherein R¹ is an acyl group or an optionally substituted heterocyclic group, X^{''} is a hydroxy group or an amino group, and other symbols have the same meanings as defined above, provided that when X^{''} is a hydroxy group, R¹ is neither an ethoxycarbonyl group nor a cyclopropylcarbonyl group, or a salt thereof, is a novel compound.

[0225] "The acyl group or the optionally substituted heterocyclic group" represented by R¹ includes, for example, the same group as those referred to herein above for the foregoing group represented by R¹.

[0226] In each of the reactions for the synthesis of the objective compounds and the starting materials, when the starting compounds have an amino group, a carboxyl group or a hydroxy group as a substituent, such groups may be protected with the protecting groups which are generally used in peptide chemistry, etc. In such case, if necessary, such protecting groups can be removed to obtain the objective compounds after the reactions.

[0227] Such protecting group includes, for example, protecting groups described in "Protective Groups in Organic Synthesis, 3rd Ed. (1999)", edited by Theodara W. Greene, Peter G. M. Wuts, published by Wiley-Interscience.

[0228] The protecting group for the amino group includes, for example, a formyl group, a C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonyl group (e.g., an acetyl group, a propionyl group, etc.), a phenylcarbonyl group, a C₁₋₆ alkyl-oxycarbonyl group (e.g., a methoxycarbonyl group, an ethoxycarbonyl group, etc.), an aryloxycarbonyl group (e.g., a phenyloxycarbonyl group, etc.), a C₇₋₁₀ aralkyl-carbonyl group (e.g., a benzyloxycarbonyl group, etc.), a benzyl group, a benzhydryl group, a trityl group, a phthaloyl, etc., each of which may be substituted. Such substituent includes, for example, a halogen atom (e.g., a fluorine atom, a chlorine atom, a bromine atom, an iodine atom, etc.), a C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonyl group (e.g., an acetyl group, a propionyl group, a butylcarbonyl group, etc.), a nitro group and the like. The number of substituent is in the order of 1 to 3.

[0229] A protecting group for the carboxyl group includes, for example, a C₁₋₆ alkyl group (e.g., a methyl group, an ethyl group, an n-propyl group, an i-propyl group, an n-butyl group, a tert-butyl group, etc.), a phenyl group, a trityl group, a silyl group and the like, each of which may be substituted. Such substituent includes, for example, a halogen atom (a fluorine atom, a chlorine atom, a bromine atom, an iodine atom), a formyl group, a C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonyl group (e.g., an acetyl group, a propionyl group, a butylcarbonyl group, etc.), a nitro group and the like. The number of substituent is in the order of 1 to 3.

[0230] The protecting group for the hydroxy group includes, for example, a C₁₋₆ alkyl group (e.g., a methyl group, an ethyl group, an n-propyl group, an i-propyl group, an n-butyl group, a tert-butyl group, etc.), a phenyl group, a C₇₋₁₀ aralkyl group (e.g., a benzyl group, etc.), a formyl group, a C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonyl group (e.g., an acetyl group, a propionyl group, etc.), an aryloxycarbonyl group (e.g., a phenyloxycarbonyl group, etc.), a C₇₋₁₀ aralkyl-carbonyl group (e.g., a benzyloxycarbonyl group, etc.), a pyranil group, a furanyl group, a silyl group and the like, each of which may be substituted. Such substituent includes, for example, a halogen atom (a fluorine atom, a chlorine atom, a bromine atom, an iodine atom, etc.), a C₁₋₆ alkyl group, a phenyl group, a C₇₋₁₀ aralkyl group, a nitro group and the like. The number of substituent is in the order of 1 to 4.

[0231] Such protecting groups can be removed by a known deprotection method or the method described in "Protective Groups in Organic Synthesis, 3rd Ed. (1999)", edited by Theodara W. Greene, Peter G. M. Wuts, published by Wiley-Interscience, or an analogous method thereto. For example, treatment with an acid, a base, reduction, ultraviolet radiation, hydrazine, phenylhydrazine, sodium N-methyldithiocarbamate, tetrabutylammonium fluoride, palladium acetate or the like, can be used.

[0232] When Compound (I) is obtained as a free compound in the above-mentioned method, a salt with for example, inorganic acids (e.g., hydrochloric acid, sulfuric acid, hydrobromic acid, etc.), organic acids (e.g., methanesulfonic acid, benzenesulfonic acid, toluenesulfonic acid, oxalic acid, fumaric acid, maleic acid, tartaric acid, etc.), inorganic bases (e.g., alkali metals such as sodium, potassium, etc., alkaline earth metals such as calcium, magnesium, etc., aluminum, ammonium, and the like), or organic bases (e.g., trimethylamine, triethylamine, pyridine, picoline, ethanolamine, diethanolamine, triethanolamine, dicyclohexylamine, N,N'-dibenzylethylenediamine, etc.) and the like can be produced in a routine manner. When Compound (I) is obtained in the form of a salt, the compound can be converted to a free compound or another salt in a routine manner.

[0233] In addition, when the starting compound forms a salt in each of the above-mentioned reactions, the compound may be used as a salt. Such salt includes, for example, those exemplified as a salt of Compound (I).

[0234] Compound (I) of the present invention thus produced by such method, can be isolated and purified by a typical separation means such as recrystallization, distillation, chromatography, etc.

[0235] When Compound (I) contains an optical isomer, a stereoisomer, a regioisomer or a rotamer, these are also encompassed in Compound (I), and can be obtained as a single product according to synthesis and separation methods known per se (for example, concentration, solvent extraction, column chromatography, recrystallization, etc.). For example, when Compound (I) has an optical isomer, an optical isomer resolved from this compound is also encompassed in Compound (I).

[0236] The optical isomer can be produced by a method known per se. To be specific, an optically active synthetic intermediate is used, or the final racemate product is subjected to optical resolution according to a conventional method to give an optical isomer.

[0237] The method of optical resolution may be a method known per se, such as a fractional recrystallization method, a chiral column method, a diastereomer method, etc.

1) Fractional recrystallization method

[0238] A method wherein a salt of a racemate with an optically active compound (e.g., (+)-mandelic acid, (-)-mandelic acid, (+)-tartaric acid, (-)-tartaric acid, (+)-1-phenethylamine, (-)-1-phenethylamine, cinchonine, (-)-cinchonidine, brucine, etc.) is formed, which is separated by a fractional recrystallization method, and if desired, a free optical isomer is obtained by a neutralization step.

2) Chiral column method

[0239] A method wherein a racemate or a salt thereof is applied to a column for separation of an optical isomer (a chiral column) to allow separation. In the case of a liquid chromatography, for example, a mixture of the optical isomers is applied to a chiral column such as ENANTIO-OVM (manufactured by Tosoh Corporation), CHIRAL series (manufactured by Daicel Chemical Industries, Ltd.) and the like, and developed with water, various buffers (e.g., phosphate buffer) and organic solvents (e.g., ethanol, methanol, isopropanol, acetonitrile, trifluoroacetic acid, diethylamine, etc.) solely or in admixture to separate the optical isomer. In the case of a gas chromatography, for example, a chiral column such as CP-Chirasil-DeX CB (manufactured by GL Sciences Inc.) and the like is used to allow separation.

3) Diastereomer method

[0240] A method wherein a racemic mixture is prepared into a diastereomeric mixture by chemical reaction with an optically active reagent, which is made into a single substance by a typical separation means (e.g., a fractional recrystallization method, a chromatography method, etc.) and the like, and is subjected to a chemical treatment such as hydrolysis and the like to separate an optically active reagent moiety, whereby an optical isomer is obtained. For example, when Compound (I) contains hydroxy, or primary or secondary amino in a molecule, the compound and an optically active organic acid (e.g., MTPA [α -methoxy- α -(trifluoromethyl)phenylacetic acid], (-)-menthoxyacetic acid, etc.) and the like are subjected to condensation reaction to give diastereomers in the ester form or in the amide form, respectively. When Compound (I) has a carboxylic acid group, this compound and an optically active amine or an alcohol reagent are subjected to condensation reaction to give diastereomers in the amide form or in the ester form, respectively. The separated diastereomer is converted to an optical isomer of the original compound by acid hydrolysis or base hydrolysis.

[0241] Compound (I) or a salt thereof may be in the form of a crystal.

[0242] The crystal of Compound (I) or a salt thereof (hereinafter, it may be referred to as crystal of the present invention) can be produced by crystallization of Compound (I) or a salt thereof by a crystallization method known per se.

[0243] Examples of the crystallization method include a method of crystallization from a solution, a method of crystallization from vapor, a method of crystallization from the melts and the like.

[0244] The "crystallization from a solution" is typically a method of shifting a non-saturated state to supersaturated state by varying factors involved in solubility of compounds (solvent composition, pH, temperature, ionic strength, redox state, etc.) or the amount of solvent. To be specific, for example, a concentration method, a cooling method, a reaction method (a diffusion method, an electrolysis method), a hydrothermal growth method, a flux method and the like can be mentioned. Examples of the solvent to be used include aromatic hydrocarbons (e.g., benzene, toluene, xylene, etc.), halogenated hydrocarbons (e.g., dichloromethane, chloroform, etc.), saturated hydrocarbons (e.g., hexane, heptane, cyclohexane, etc.), ethers (e.g., diethyl ether, diisopropyl ether, tetrahydrofuran, dioxane, etc.), nitriles (e.g., acetonitrile, etc.), ketones (e.g., acetone, etc.), sulfoxides (e.g., dimethylsulfoxide, etc.), acid amides (e.g., N,N-dimethylformamide, etc.), esters (e.g., ethyl acetate, etc.), alcohols (e.g., methanol, ethanol, isopropyl alcohol, etc.), water and the like. These solvents are used alone or in a combination of two or more at a suitable ratio (e.g., 1:1 to 1:100 (a

volume ratio)).

[0245] The "crystallization from vapor" is, for example, a vaporization method (a sealed tube method, a gas stream method), a gas phase reaction method, a chemical transportation method and the like.

[0246] The "crystallization from the melts" is, for example, a normal freezing method (a Czochralski method, a temperature gradient method and a Bridgman method), a zone melting method (a zone leveling method and a floating zone method), a special growth method (a VLS method and a liquid phase epitaxy method) and the like.

[0247] Preferable examples of the crystallization method include a method of dissolving Compound (I) or a salt thereof in a suitable solvent (e.g., alcohols such as methanol, ethanol, etc. and the like) at a temperature of 20 to 120°C, and cooling the resulting solution to a temperature not higher than the temperature of dissolution (e.g., 0 to 50°C, preferably 0 to 20°C) and the like.

[0248] The thus obtained crystals of the present invention can be isolated, for example, by filtration and the like.

[0249] In the present specification, the melting point means that measured using, for example, a micromelting point apparatus (Yanako, MP-500D) or a DSC (differential scanning calorimetry) device (SEIKO, EXSTAR6000) and the like.

[0250] In the present specification, the peak by a powder X-ray diffraction means that measured using, for example, RINT2100 (Rigaku Corporation), etc. with a Cu-K α 1 ray (tube voltage: 40 KV; tube current: 50 mA) as a ray source.

[0251] In general, the melting points and the peak by a powder X-ray diffraction vary depending on the measurement apparatuses, the measurement conditions and the like. The crystal in the present specification may show different values from the melting point described in the present specification or the peak by a powder X-ray diffraction vary depending on the measurement apparatuses, as long as they are within each of a general error range.

[0252] The crystal of the present invention is superior in physicochemical properties (e.g., melting point, solubility, stability, etc.) and biological properties (e.g., pharmacokinetics (absorption, distribution, metabolism, excretion), efficacy expression, etc.), and thus it is extremely useful as a medicament.

[0253] Compound (I) or a salt thereof or a prodrug of the present invention (hereinafter, it may be briefly referred to as the compound of the present invention) has excellent antagonistic action for a tachykinin receptor, particularly Substance P receptor antagonistic action, neurokinin A receptor antagonistic action, in addition to inhibitory action for the increased permeability of blood vessel of a trachea induced by capsaicin. The compound of the present invention has low toxicity and thus it is safe.

[0254] Accordingly, the compound of the present invention having excellent antagonistic action for Substance P receptors and neurokinin A receptors, etc. can be used as a safe medicine for preventing and treating the following diseases related to Substance P in mammals (e.g., mice, rats, hamsters, rabbits, cats, dogs, bovines, sheep, monkeys, humans, etc.).

(1) Abnormality of lower urinary tract functions [for example, abnormal micturition such as urinary frequency, urinary incontinence, etc.]

(2) Digestive organ diseases [for example, irritable bowel syndrome, ulcerative colitis, Crohn's disease, diseases caused by a spiral urease-positive gram-negative bacterium (e.g., *Helicobacter pylori*, etc.) (e.g., gastritis, gastric ulcer, etc.), gastric cancer, postgastrectomy disorder, dyspepsia, esophageal ulcer, pancreatitis, polyp of the colon, cholelithiasis, hemorrhoids, peptic ulcer, situational ileitis, vomiting, etc.]

(3) Inflammatory or allergic diseases [for example, allergic rhinitis, conjunctivitis, gastrointestinal allergy, pollinosis, anaphylaxis, dermatitis, herpes, psoriasis, bronchitis, expectoration, retinopathy, postoperative and posttraumatic inflammation, regression of puffiness, pharyngitis, cystitis, meningitis, inflammatory ophthalmic diseases, etc.]

(4) Osteoarthropathy diseases [for example, rheumatoid arthritis (chronic rheumatoid arthritis), arthritis deformans, rheumatoid myelitis, osteoporosis, abnormal growth of cells, bone fracture, bone refracture, osteomalacia, osteopenia, osseous Behcet's disease, rigid myelitis, articular tissue destruction by gonarthrosis deformans and similar diseases thereto, etc.]

(5) Respiratory diseases [for example, cold syndrome, pneumonia, asthma, pulmonary hypertension, pulmonary thrombi/pulmonary obliteration, pulmonary sarcoidosis, pulmonary tuberculosis, interstitial pneumonia, silicosis, adult tachypnea syndrome, chronic obliterative pulmonary diseases, cough, etc.]

(6) Infectious diseases [HIV infectious diseases, virus infectious diseases due to cytomegalo virus, influenza virus, herpes virus and the like, rickettsia infectious diseases, bacterial infectious diseases, sexually-transmitted diseases, carinii pneumonia, *Helicobacter pylori* infectious disease, systemic fungal infectious diseases, tuberculosis, invasive staphylococcal infectious diseases, acute viral encephalitis, acute bacterial meningitis, AIDS encephalitis, septicemia, sepsis, sepsis gravis, septic shock, endotoxin shock, toxic shock syndromes, etc.]

(7) Cancers [for example, primary, metastatic or recurrent breast cancer, prostatic cancer, pancreatic cancer, gastric cancer, lung cancer, colorectal cancer (colon cancer, rectal cancer, anal cancer), esophagus cancer, duodenal cancer, head and neck cancer (tongue cancer, pharynx cancer, larynx cancer), brain tumor, neurinoma, non-small cell lung cancer, small cell lung cancer, hepatic cancer, renal cancer, colic cancer, uterine cancer (cancer of the uterine body, uterine cervical cancer), ovarian cancer, bladder cancer, skin cancer, hemangioma, malignant lymphoma, etc.]

phoma, malignant melanoma, thyroid cancer, bone tumor, hemangioma, angiofibroma, retinosarcoma, penis cancer, pediatric solid cancer, Kaposi's sarcoma, Kaposi's sarcoma caused by AIDS, tumor of the maxillary sinus, fibrous histiocytoma, smooth muscle sarcoma, rhabdomyosarcoma, liposarcoma, fibroid tumors of the uterus, osteoblastoma, osteosarcoma, chondrosarcoma, carcinomatous mesothelial tumor, tumors such as leukemia, Hodgkin's disease, etc.]

(8) Central nerve diseases [for example, neurodegenerative diseases (e.g., Alzheimer's disease, Down's disease, Parkinson's disease, Creutzfeldt-Jakob's disease, amyotrophic lateral sclerosis (ALS), Huntington chorea, diabetic neuropathy, multiple sclerosis, etc.), mental diseases (e.g., schizophrenia, depression, mania, anxiety neurosis, obsessive-compulsive neurosis, panic disorder, epilepsy, alcohol dependence, anxiety symptom, anxious mental state, etc.), central and peripheral nerve disorders (e.g., head trauma, spinal cord injury, brain edema, disorders of sensory function, abnormality of sensory function, disorders of autonomic nervous function and abnormality of autonomic nervous function, whiplash injury, etc.), memory disorders (e.g., senile dementia, amnesia, cerebrovascular dementia, etc.), cerebrovascular disorders (e.g., disorders and aftereffect and/or complication from intracerebral hemorrhage, brain infarction, etc., asymptomatic cerebro-vascular accident, transient cerebral ischemic attack, hypertensive encephalopathy, blood-brain barrier disorder, etc.), recurrence and aftereffect of cerebrovascular accident (neural symptoms, mental symptoms, subjective symptoms, disorders of daily living activities, etc.), post-cerebrovascular occlusion central hypofunction; disorder or abnormality of cerebral circulation and/or autoregulation of renal circulation]

(9) Circulatory diseases [for example, acute coronary artery syndromes (e.g., acute cardiac infarction, unstable angina, etc.), peripheral arterial obstruction, Raynaud's disease; Buerger disease; restenosis after coronary-artery intervention (percutaneous transluminal coronary angioplasty (PTCA), directional coronary atherectomy (DCA), stenting, etc.), restenosis after coronary-artery bypass operation, restenosis after intervention (angioplasty, atherectomy, stenting, etc.) or bypass operation in other peripheral artery, ischemic cardiac diseases (e.g., cardiac infarction, angina, etc.), myocarditis, intermittent claudication, lacunar infarction, arteriosclerosis (e.g., atherosclerosis, etc.), cardiac failure (acute cardiac failure, chronic cardiac failure accompanied by congestion), arrhythmia, progress of atherosclerotic plaque, thrombosis, hypertension, hypertensive tinnitus; hypotension, etc.]

(10) Pains [e.g., migraine, neuralgia, etc.]

(11) Autoimmune diseases [for example, collagen disease, systemic lupus erythematosus, scleroderma, polyarteritis, myasthenia gravis, multiple sclerosis, Sjogren's syndrome, Behcet's disease, etc.]

(12) Hepatic diseases [e.g., hepatitis (including chronic hepatitis), cirrhosis, interstitial hepatic diseases, etc.]

(13) Pancreatic diseases [e.g., pancreatitis (including chronic pancreatitis), etc.]

(14) Renal diseases [e.g., nephritis, glomerulonephritis, glomerulosclerosis, renal failure, thrombotic microangiopathy, dialysis complications, organ disorders including nephropathy by radiation, diabetic nephropathy, etc.]

(15) Metabolic diseases [e.g., diabetic diseases (insulin-dependent diabetes, diabetic complications, diabetic retinopathy, diabetic microangiopathy, diabetic neuropathy, etc.); glucose tolerance abnormality, obesity, prostatomegaly, sexual dysfunction, etc.]

(16) Endocrine diseases [e.g., Addison's disease, Cushing's syndrome, melanocytoma, primary aldosteronism, etc.]

(17) Other diseases

(A) Transplant rejection [e.g., posttransplantational rejection, posttransplantational polycythemia, hypertension, organ disorder and/or vascular hypertrophy, graft-versus-host disease, etc.]

(B) Abnormality in characteristic of blood and/or blood components [e.g., enhancement in platelet aggregation, abnormality of erythrocyte deformability, enhancement in leukocyte adhesiveness, increase in blood viscosity, polycythemia, vascular peliosis, autoimmune hemolytic anemia, disseminated intravascular coagulation syndrome (DIC), multiple myelopathy, etc.]

(C) Gynecologic diseases [e.g., climacteric disorder, gestational toxicosis, endometriosis, hysteromyoma, ovarian disease, mammary disease, etc.]

(D) Dermatic diseases [e.g., keloid, angioma, psoriasis, pruritus, etc.]

(E) Ophthalmic diseases [e.g., glaucoma, ocular hypertension disease, etc.]

(F) Otolaryngological diseases [e.g., Meniere syndrome, tinnitus, gustation disorder, dizziness, disequilibrium, dysphagia, etc.]

(G) Diseases due to environmental and/or occupational factors (e.g., radiation disorder, disorders by ultraviolet ray-infrared ray-laser ray, altitude sickness, etc.)

(H) Ataxia

(I) Chronic fatigue syndrome

[0255] Among the diseases as described above, particularly, the compounds of the present invention are useful as

a tachykinin receptor antagonist and as an agent for ameliorating abnormality of lower urinary tract functions such as urinary frequency, urinary incontinence, etc., and even as an agent for treating such abnormality of lower urinary tract functions.

[0256] Pharmaceutical preparations comprising Compound of the present invention may be in any solid forms of powders, granules, tablets, capsules, suppositories, etc., and in any liquid forms of syrups, emulsions, injections, suspensions, etc.

[0257] The pharmaceutical preparations of the present invention can be produced by any conventional methods, for example, blending, kneading, granulation, tableting, coating, sterilization, emulsification, etc., in accordance with the forms of the preparations to be produced. For the production of such pharmaceutical preparations, for example, each of the items in General Principles for pharmaceutical preparations in the Japanese Pharmacopeia, can be made reference to. In addition, the pharmaceutical preparations of the present invention may be formulated into a sustained release preparation containing active ingredients and biodegradable polymer compounds. The sustained release preparation can be produced according to the method described in JP-A-9-263545.

[0258] In the pharmaceutical preparations of the present invention, the content of the compound or a salt thereof in the present invention varies depending on the forms of the preparations, but is generally in the order of about 0.01 to 100 % by weight, preferably about 0.1 to 50 % by weight, more preferably 0.5 to 20 % by weight, relative to the total weight of each preparation.

[0259] When the compound of the present invention is used in the above-mentioned pharmaceutical preparations, it may be used alone, or in admixture with a suitable, pharmaceutically acceptable carrier, for example, excipients (e.g., starch, lactose, sucrose, calcium carbonate, calcium phosphate, etc.), binders (e.g., starch, arabic gum, carboxymethyl cellulose, hydroxypropyl cellulose, crystalline cellulose, alginic acid, gelatin, polyvinyl pyrrolidone, etc.), lubricants (e.g., stearic acid, magnesium stearate, calcium stearate, talc, etc.), disintegrants (e.g., calcium carboxymethylcellulose, talc, etc.), diluents (e.g., water for injection, physiological saline, etc.) and if desired, with the additives (e.g., a stabilizer, a preservative, a colorant, a fragrance, a dissolution aid, an emulsifier, a buffer, an isotonic agent, etc.) and the like, by ordinary methods. It can be formulated into the solid preparations such as powders, fine granules, granules, tablets, capsules, etc., or into the liquid preparations such as injections, etc., and can be administered non-parenterally or parenterally.

[0260] The dose of the pharmaceutical preparation of the present invention varies depending on the kinds of the compound of the present invention or a pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof, the administration route, the condition and the age of patients, etc. For example, the dose for oral administration of the pharmaceutical preparation to an adult patient suffering from abnormal urination is generally from about 0.005 to 50 mg/kg body/day, preferably from about 0.05 to 10 mg/kg body/day, more preferably from about 0.2 to 4 mg/kg body/day. In terms of the compound of the present invention, which may be administered once a day or in two or three divided portions a day.

[0261] The dose when the pharmaceutical composition of the present invention is a sustained release preparation varies depending on the kinds and the content of Compound (I) or a salt thereof, the formulation, the duration time of drug release, the animals to be administered (e.g., mammals such as humans, rats, mice, cats, dogs, rabbits, bovines, pigs, etc.), and the purpose of administration. For example, when it is applied by parenteral administration, preferably about 0.1 to about 100 mg of Compound (I) or a salt thereof is released from the preparation for 1 week.

[0262] The compound of the present invention can be used in a mixture or combination with other pharmaceutically active ingredients at a suitable ratio.

[0263] Combination of the compound of the present invention with other pharmaceutically active ingredients can give the following excellent effects:

(1) a dose can be reduced as compared with separate administration of the compound of the present invention or other pharmaceutically active ingredients. More specifically, when the compound of the present invention is combined with anticholinergic agents or NK-2 receptor antagonists, the dose can be reduced as compared with separate administration of anticholinergic agents or NK-2 receptor antagonists, and therefore, side effects such as dry mouth can be reduced;

(2) according to symptoms of patient (mild symptoms, severe symptoms, etc.), a drug to be combined with the compound of the present invention can be selected;

(3) by choosing other pharmaceutically active ingredients which have different mechanism of action from that of the compound of the present invention, the therapeutic period can be designed longer;

(4) by choosing other pharmaceutically active ingredients which have different mechanism of action from that of the compound of the present invention, continuation of therapeutic effects can be obtained; and

(5) by combining the compound of the present invention and other pharmaceutically active ingredients, excellent effects such as synergic effects can be obtained.

[0264] A drug which is mixed or combined with the compound of the present invention (hereinafter, briefly referred

to as combination drugs) includes the following:

(1) Agent for treating diabetes

- 5 **[0265]** Insulin preparations (e.g., animal insulin preparations extracted from the bovine or swine pancreas; human insulin preparations synthesized by a genetic engineering technique using *Escherichia coli* or a yeast; insulin zinc; protamine zinc insulin; a fragment or a derivative of insulin (e.g., INS-1, etc.), agents for potentiating insulin sensitivity (e.g., pioglitazone hydrochloride, troglitazone, rosiglitazone or its maleate, JTT-501, MCC-555, YM-440, GI-262570, KRP-297, FK-614, CS-011, etc.), α -glucosidase inhibitors (e.g., voglibose, acarbose, miglitol, emiglitate, etc.), biguanides (e.g., phenformin, metformin, buformin, etc.), sulfonylureas (e.g., tolbutamide, glibenclamide, gliclazide, chlorpropamide, tolazamide, acetohexamide, glycopyramide, glimepiride, etc.) and other insulin secretagogues (e.g., repaglinide, senaglinide, mitiglinide or its calcium salt hydrate, GLP-1, nateglinide, etc.), dipeptidylpeptidase IV inhibitors (e.g., NVP-DPP-278, PT-100, P32/98, etc.), β_3 agonists (e.g., CL-316243, SR-58611-A, UL-TG-307, AJ-9677, AZ40140, etc.), amylin agonists (e.g., pramlintide, etc.), phosphotyrosine phosphatase inhibitors (e.g., vanadic acid, etc.), gluconeogenesis inhibitors (e.g., glycogen phosphorylase inhibitors, glucose-6-phosphatase inhibitors, glucagon antagonists, etc.), SGLT (sodium-glucose cotransporter) inhibitors (e.g., T-1095, etc.) and the like.

(2) Agent for treating diabetic complications

- 20 **[0266]** Aldose reductase inhibitors (e.g., tolrestat, epalrestat, zenarestat, zopolrestat, fidarestat (SNK-860), minalrestat (ARI-509), CT-112, etc.), neurotrophic factors (e.g., NGF, NT-3, etc.), AGE inhibitors (e.g., ALT-945, pimagedine, pyratoxathine, N-phenacylthiazolium bromide (ALT-766), EXO-226, etc.), active oxygen scavengers (e.g., thiocetic acid, etc.), cerebral vasodilators (e.g., tiapuride, etc.) and the like.

25 (3) Antihyperlipidemic agent

- [0267]** Statin compounds inhibiting cholesterol synthesis (e.g., pravastatin, simvastatin, lovastatin, atorvastatin, fluvastatin, cerivastatin or their salt (e.g., sodium salt salt, etc.) and the like), squalene synthase inhibitors or fibrate compounds having triglyceride lowering action (e.g., bezafibrate, clofibrate, simfibrate, cefibrate, etc.) and the like.

(4) Hypotensive agent

- [0268]** Angiotensin converting enzyme inhibitors (e.g., captopril, enalapril, delapril, etc.), angiotensin II antagonists (e.g., losartan, candesartan cilexetil, etc.), calcium antagonists (e.g., manidipine, nifedipine, amlodipine, efonidipine, nicardipine, etc.), clonidine, and the like.

(5) Antiobesity agent

- 40 **[0269]** Antiobesity drugs acting on the central nervous system (e.g. dexfenfluramine, fenfluramine, phentermine, sibutramine, anfepramone, dexamphetamine, mazindol, phenylpropanolamine, clobenzorex, etc.), pancreatic lipase inhibitors (e.g. orlistat, etc.), β_3 agonists (e.g. CL-316243, SR-58611-A, UL-TG-307, AJ-9677, AZ40140, etc.), anorectic peptides (e.g. leptin, CNTF (Ciliary Neurotrophic Factor), etc.), cholecystokinin agonists (e.g. linitript, FPL-15849, etc.).

(6) Diuretic agent

- 45 **[0270]** Xanthine derivatives (e.g., theobromine sodium salicylate, theobromine calcium salicylate, etc.), thiazide preparations (e.g., ethiazide, cyclopenthiazide, trichlormethiazide, hydrochlorothiazide, hydroflumethiazide, benzylhydrochlorothiazide, penflutizide, polythiazide, methyclothiazide, etc.), antialdosterone preparations (e.g., spironolactone, triamterene, etc.), carbonic anhydrase inhibitors (e.g., acetazolamide, etc.), chlorobenzenesulfonamide preparations (e.g., chlorthalidone, mefruside, indapamide, etc.), azosemide, isosorbide, ethacrynic acid, piretanide, bumetanide, furosemide, etc.

(7) Chemotherapeutic agent

- 55 **[0271]** Alkylating agents (e.g., cyclophosphamide, ifosamide, etc.), metabolic antagonists (e.g., methotrexate, 5-fluorouracil, etc.), antitumor antibiotics (e.g., mitomycin, adriamycin, etc.), plant-derived antitumor agents (e.g., vincristine, vindesine, taxol, etc.), cisplatin, carboplatin, etoposide, etc. Among these, 5- fluorouracil derivatives such as Furtulon and Neo-Furtulon are preferred.

(8) Immunotherapeutic agent

[0272] Microorganism- or bacterium-derived components (e.g., muramyl dipeptide derivatives, Picibanil, etc.), immunopotentiator polysaccharides (e.g., lentinan, schizophyllan, krestin, etc.), genetically engineered cytokines (e.g., interferons, interleukins (IL), etc.), colony stimulating factors (e.g., granulocyte colony stimulating factor, erythropoietin, etc.) and the like.

Among these, interleukins such as IL-1, IL-2, IL-12, etc. are preferred.

(9) Therapeutic agent recognized to ameliorate cachexia in animal models or clinical practice

[0273] Progesterone derivatives (e.g., megestrol acetate) [Journal of Clinical Oncology, vol. 12, pp. 213-225, 1994], metoclopramide pharmaceuticals, tetrahydrocannabinol pharmaceuticals (the above references are applied to both), fat metabolism ameliorating agents (e.g., eicosapentanoic acid) [British Journal of Cancer, vol. 68, pp. 314-318, 1993], growth hormones, IGF-1, and antibodies to the cachexia-inducing factors such as TNF- α , LIF, IL-6 and oncostatin M.

(10) Antiinflammatory agent

[0274] Steroids (e.g., dexamethasone, etc.), sodium hyaluronate, cyclooxygenase inhibitors (e.g., indomethacin, ketoprofen, loxoprofen, meloxicam, ampiroxicam, celecoxib, rofecoxib, etc.) and the like.

(11) Miscellaneous

[0275] glycosylation inhibitors (e.g., ALT-711, etc.), nerve regeneration promoting drugs (e.g., Y-128, VX853, prosaptide, etc.), drugs acting on the central nervous system (e.g., antidepressants such as desipramine, amitriptyline, imipramine, fluoxetine, paroxetine, doxepin, etc.), anticonvulsants (e.g., lamotrigine, carbamazepine), antiarrhythmic drugs (e.g., mexiletine), acetylcholine receptor ligands (e.g., ABT-594), endothelin receptor antagonists (e.g., ABT-627), monoamine uptake inhibitors (e.g., tramadol), indoleamine uptake inhibitors (e.g., fluoxetine, paroxetine), narcotic analgesics (e.g., morphine), GABA receptor agonists (e.g., gabapentin), GABA uptake inhibitors (e.g., tiagabine), α_2 receptor agonists (e.g., clonidine), local analgesics (e.g., capsaicin), protein kinase C inhibitors (e.g., LY-333531), antianxiety drugs (e.g., benzodiazepines), phosphodiesterase inhibitors (e.g., sildenafil), dopamine receptor agonists (e.g., apomorphine), dopamine receptor antagonists (e.g., haloperidol), serotonin receptor agonists (e.g., tandospirone citrate, sumatriptan), serotonin receptor antagonists (e.g., cyproheptadine hydrochloride, ondansetron), serotonin uptake inhibitors (e.g., fluvoxamine maleate, fluoxetine, paroxetine), hypnotics (e.g., triazolam, zolpidem), anticholinergic agents, α_1 receptor blocking agents (e.g., tamsulosin), muscle relaxants (e.g., baclofen, etc.), potassium channel openers (e.g., nicorandil), calcium channel blocking agents (e.g., nifedipine), agents for preventing and/or treating Alzheimer's disease (e.g., donepezil, rivastigmine, galantamine), agents for treating Parkinson's disease (e.g., L-dopa), agents for preventing and/or treating multiple sclerosis (e.g., interferon β -1a), histamine H_1 receptor inhibitors (e.g., promethazine hydrochloride), proton pump inhibitors (e.g., lansoprazole, omeprazole), antithrombotic agents (e.g., aspirin, cilostazol), NK-2 receptor antagonists, agents of treating HIV infection (saquinavir, zidovudine, lamivudine, nevirapine), agents of treating chronic obstructive pulmonary diseases (salmeterol, tiotropium bromide, cilomilast), etc.

[0276] Anticholinergic agents include, for example, atropine, scopolamine, homatropine, tropicamide, cyclopentolate, butylscopolamine bromide, propantheline bromide, methylbenactyzium bromide, mepenzolate bromide, flavoxate, pirenzepine, ipratropium bromide, trihexyphenidyl, oxybutynin, propiverine, darifenacin, tolterodine, temiverine, trospium chloride or a salt thereof (e.g., atropine sulfate, scopolamine hydrobromide, homatropine hydrobromide, cyclopentolate hydrochloride, flavoxate hydrochloride, pirenzepine hydrochloride, trihexyphenidyl hydrochloride, oxybutynin chloride, tolterodine tartrate, etc.), preferably, oxybutynin, propiverine, darifenacin, tolterodine, temiverine, trospium chloride or a salt thereof (e.g., oxybutynin chloride, tolterodine tartrate, etc.). In addition, acetylcholinesterase inhibitors (e.g., distigmine, etc.) and the like can be used.

[0277] NK-2 receptor antagonists include, for example, a piperidine derivative such as GR159897, GR149861, SR48968 (saredutant), SR144190, YM35375, YM38336, ZD7944, L-743986, MDL105212A, ZD6021, MDL105172A, SCH205528, SCH62373, R-113281, etc., a perhydroisoindole derivative such as RPR-106145, etc., a quinoline derivative such as SB-414240, etc., a pyrrolopyrimidine derivative such as ZM-253270, etc., a pseudopeptide derivative such as MEN11420 (nepadutant), SCH217048, L-659877, PD-147714 (CAM-2291), MEN10376, S16474, etc., and others such as GR100679, DNK333, GR94800, UK-224671, MEN10376, MEN10627, or a salt thereof, and the like.

[0278] The pharmaceutical composition comprising a mixture or combination of the compound of the present invention and the combination drugs may be formulated into

- (1) a single formulation as a pharmaceutical composition containing the compound of the present invention and the combination drugs, or
 (2) a formulation comprising the compound of the present invention and the combination drugs which are separately formulated. Hereinafter, it is generally briefly referred to as the combination preparation of the present invention.

[0279] The combination preparation of the present invention can be formulated by mixing the compound of the present invention and active ingredients of the combination drugs separately or at the same time as itself or with pharmaceutically acceptable carriers in the same manner as in the method of producing the pharmaceutical preparation comprising the compound of the present invention.

[0280] A daily dose of the combination preparation of the present invention varies depending on severity of the symptoms, age, sex, weight and sensitivity of the subject to be administered, time and interval of administration, property, formulation and kinds of pharmaceutical preparation, kinds of active ingredients, etc., and is not particularly limited. The dose in terms of the compound of the present invention is not particularly limited if it causes no problems of side effects. In the case of oral administration, a daily dosage is usually in a range of about 0.005 to 100 mg, preferably about 0.05 to 50 mg, and more preferably about 0.2 to 30 mg, per 1 kg body weight of mammals, which may be administered once a day or in two or three divided portions a day.

[0281] The dose of the compound or the combination preparation of the present invention may be set within the range such that it causes no problems of side effects. The daily dose as the compound or the combination preparation of the present invention varies depending on severity of symptoms, age, sex, weight and sensitivity of the subject to be administered, time and interval of administration, property, formulation and kinds of pharmaceutical preparation, kinds of active ingredients, etc., and is not particularly limited. In the case of oral administration, a daily dosage in terms of active ingredients is usually in the order of about 0.001 to 2000 mg, preferably about 0.01 to 500 mg, and more preferably about 0.1 to 100 mg, per 1 kg body weight of mammals, which may be administered once a day or in two to four divided portions a day.

[0282] In administering the combination preparation of the present invention, the compound of the present invention and the combination drugs may be administered at the same time or, the combination drugs may be administered before administering the compound of the present invention, and vice versa. In case of staggered administration, the time interval varies depending on the active ingredients to be administered, a formulation and an administration route. For example, if the combination drugs are administered first, the compound of the present invention may be administered 1 minute to 3 days, preferably 10 minutes to 1 day, more preferably 15 minutes to 1 hour after administering the combination drugs. If the compound of the present invention is administered first, the combination drugs may be administered 1 minute to 1 day, preferably 10 minutes to 6 hours, more preferably 15 minutes to 1 hour after administering the compound of the present invention.

[0283] In a preferred administration method, about 0.001 to 200 mg/kg of the combination drugs formulated as an oral preparation is administered orally and then after about 15 minutes, about 0.005 to 100 mg/kg of the compound of the present invention formulated as an oral preparation is administered orally as a daily dose.

[0284] In the combination preparation of the present invention, the content of the compound of the present invention varies depending on the forms of the preparation, but usually in the order of 0.01 to 100 wt%, preferably 0.1 to 50 wt%, and further preferably 0.5 to 20 wt%, relative to the total preparation.

EXAMPLES

[0285] The present invention is further described in detail in with reference to Reference Examples, Examples, Preparative Examples and Experimental Example which are not intended to restrict the invention and may be modified without departing from the scope of the invention.

[0286] Elution in the column chromatography in the following Reference Examples and Examples was conducted under observation by TLC (thin layer chromatography), unless otherwise specifically indicated. In the TLC observation, 60F₂₅₄, TLC plates, produced by Merck & Co., Inc. was used, and the solvent employed as an elution solvent in the column chromatography was used as an eluent. For the detection, a UV detector was used. As silica gel for the column chromatography, Silica Gel 60 (70 to 230 mesh) produced by Merck & Co., Inc. was used. "room temperature" referred herein means temperature generally from about 10°C to 35°C. For drying extract, sodium sulfate or magnesium sulfate was used.

[0287] The meanings of the abbreviations as used in the following Examples and Reference Examples are as follows:

NMR: Nuclear Magnetic Resonance Spectrum

LC-MS: Liquid Chromatography-Mass Spectrometry

ESI: Electron Spray Ionization

DMF: Dimethylformamide, THF: Tetrahydrofuran, DMSO: Dimethylsulfoxide, IPE: diisopropyl ether, EPPA: ethyl

EP 1 553 084 A1

o-phenylene phosphate, NaBH(OAc)₃: sodium triacetoxyborohydride, HOBt·H₂O: 1-hydroxybenzotriazole hydrate, WSC-HCl: 1-ethyl-3-(dimethylaminopropyl)carbodiimide hydrochloride, Et₃N: triethylamine, Hz: Hertz, J: coupling constant, m: multiplet, q: quartet, t: triplet, d: doublet, s: singlet, br: broad, like: approximation, M: Molecular ion peak, cis: cis, trans: trans, Rf: Retardation factor, N: normal concentration, M: molar concentration, MPa: Mega Pascal, wt%: percent by weight, Boc: tert-butyloxycarbonyl.

[0288] LC-MS In Examples and Reference Examples was measured under the following conditions.

LC-MS (Condition A)

Measurement Instrument: LC-MS system, Waters Corporation

[0289]

HPLC part: HP1100, Agilent Technologies, Inc.

MS part: ZQ, Waters Corporation

HPLC condition

[0290]

Column: CAPCELL PAK C18UG120, S-3 µm, 2.0 × 50 mm (Shiseido Co., Ltd.)

Solvent: Solution A; 0.05% trifluoroacetic acid-containing water, Solution B; 0.04% trifluoroacetic acid-containing acetonitrile

Gradient cycle: 0.00 minute (Solution A/Solution B=90/10), 4.00 minutes (Solution A/Solution B=5/95), 5.50 minutes (Solution A/Solution B=5/95), 5.51 minutes (Solution A/Solution B=90/10), 5.51 minutes (Solution A/Solution B=10/90), 8.00 minutes (Solution A/Solution B=90/10)

Injection amount: 2 µl, Flow rate: 0.5 ml/min, Detection method: UV 220 nm

MS condition

[0291]

Ionization method: ESI

LC-MS (Condition B)

Measurement Instrument: LC-MS system, Waters Corporation

[0292]

HPLC part: HP1100, Agilent Technologies, Inc.

MS part: ZMD, Micromass

HPLC condition

[0293]

Column: CAPCELL PAK C18UG120, S-3 µm, 1.5 × 35 mm (Shiseido Co., Ltd.)

Solvent: Solution A; 0.05% trifluoroacetic acid-containing water, Solution B; 0.04% trifluoroacetic acid-containing acetonitrile

Gradient cycle: 0.00 minute (Solution A/Solution B=90/10), 2.00 minutes (Solution A/Solution B=5/95), 2.75 minutes (Solution A/Solution B=5/95), 2.76 minutes (Solution A/Solution B=90/10), 3.60 minutes (Solution A/Solution B=90/10)

Injection amount: 2 µl, Flow rate: 0.5 ml/min, Detection method: UV 220 nm

MS condition

[0294]

5 Ionization method: ESI

[0295] Purification by preparative HPLC in Examples and Reference Examples was carried out under the following conditions.

10 Instrument: High Throughput Purification System, Gilson Company, Inc.
 Column: YMC CombiPrep ODS-AS-5 μm , 50 \times 20 mm
 Solvent: Solution A: 0.1% trifluoroacetic acid-containing water, Solution B; 0.1% trifluoroacetic acid-containing acetonitrile
 Gradient cycle: 0.00 minute (Solution A/Solution B=95/5), 1.00 minute (Solution A/Solution B=95/5), 5.20 minutes (Solution A/Solution B=5/95), 6.40 minutes (Solution A/Solution B=5/95), 6.50 minutes (Solution A/Solution B=95/5), 6.60 minutes (Solution A/Solution B=95/5)
 15 Flow rate: 25 ml/min, Detection method: UV 220 nm

Reference Example 1

20 *cis*-4-[[3,5-Bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-3-phenylpiperidine-1-carboxylic acid *tert*-butyl ester

(Process 1)

25 [0296] To a solution of ethyl 3-[(3-ethoxy-3-oxopropyl)amino]-2-phenylpropanoate (1.0 g) and sodium carbonate (0.72 g) in acetonitrile (2 ml), benzyl bromide (0.64 g) was added, and the reaction mixture was stirred at 75°C for 2 hours. The reaction mixture was poured into water, and then the product was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with saturated brine, dried, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure to obtain ethyl 3-benzyl(3-ethoxy-3-oxopropyl)amino]-2-phenylpropanoate as colorless oil (1.20 g).

30 [0297] $^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3): δ 1.22 (6H, t like, $J=7.1$ Hz), 2.35-2.48 (2H, m), 2.67-2.88 (3H, m), 3.27 (1H, dd, $J=13.0$, 9.8 Hz), 3.57 (1H, d, $J=14.0$ Hz), 3.72 (1H, d, $J=14.0$ Hz), 3.80 (1H, dd, $J=9.8$ Hz, 5.4 Hz), 4.02-4.24 (4H, m), 7.19-7.40 (10H, m).

(Process 2)

35 [0298] To a solution of sodium hydride (60% in oil, 0.27 g) in benzene (6.1 ml), a solution of the compound (1.30 g) obtained in Process 1 in ethanol (1.4 ml) was added, and the reaction mixture was stirred at 70°C for 1 hour. The reaction mixture was cooled, and then concentrated hydrochloric acid (1.7 ml) was added thereto, and the mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure. To the obtained residue, acetic acid (4 ml) and concentrated hydrochloric acid (4 ml) were added, and the reaction mixture was stirred at 120°C for 3 hours.

40 The reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure, and then into the obtained residue were water and ethyl acetate poured, the organic layer was washed with saturated brine, dried, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The obtained residue was isolated and purified by silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate : hexane = 1 : 10) to obtain ethyl 1-benzyl-4-hydroxy-5-phenyl-1,2,5,6-tetrahydro-3-pyridine carboxylate as colorless oil (0.46 g).

45 $^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3): δ 1.30 (3H, t, $J=7.1$ Hz), 2.62 (1H, dd, $J=11.6$, 6.2 Hz), 2.88 (1H, dd, $J=11.6$, 5.2 Hz), 3.23-3.40 (2H, m), 3.63 (2H, s), 3.64-3.74 (1H, m), 4.23 (2H, q, $J=7.1$ Hz), 7.24-7.38 (10H, m).

(Process 3)

50 [0299] To a solution of the compound (15.0 g) obtained in Process 2 in acetic acid (90 ml), concentrated hydrochloric acid (90 ml) was added, and the reaction mixture was stirred at 120°C for 12 hours. The reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure, and then into the obtained residue was poured ethyl acetate, and made basic with an aqueous sodium hydroxide solution. The organic layer was washed with saturated brine, dried, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure to obtain 1-benzyl-3-phenyl-4-piperidinone as colorless oil (10.4 g).

55 $^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3): δ 2.47 - 2.85 (4H, m), 3.00-3.25 (2H, m), 3.67 (2H, s), 3.81 (1H, dd, $J=10.0$, 5.6 Hz), 7.19-7.40 (10H, m).

(Process 4)

[0300] A solution of the compound (2.00 g) obtained in Process 3, hydrochloric acid (0.2 ml) and palladium carbon (10 wt%, 0.30 g) in ethanol (30 ml) was stirred at 40°C for 3 hours under hydrogen atmosphere of 0.5 MPa. The catalyst was removed by filtration, and then the reaction solution was concentrated under reduced pressure to obtain crude 3-phenyl-4-piperidone as pale yellow powder. The obtained product was used in the next process without further purification.

(Process 5)

[0301] To a solution of the compound (3.47 g) obtained in Process 4 and Et₃N (2.76 ml) in acetonitrile (50 ml), di-tert-butyl dicarbonate (6.55 g) was added, and the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 14 hours. The reaction mixture was poured into water, and then the product was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with an aqueous 10% citric acid solution and saturated brine, dried, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The obtained residue was isolated and purified by silica gel column chromatography (hexane : ethyl acetate = 10 : 1) to obtain 4-oxo-3-phenylpiperidine-1-carboxylic acid tert-butyl ester as white powder (3.90 g, 71%). The obtained product was used in the next process without further purification.

(Process 6)

[0302] To a solution of the compound (9.70 g) obtained in Process 5 in THF (100 ml), a solution of 1 M *L*-selectride/THF (78 ml) was added at -78°C, and the reaction mixture was stirred at 0°C for 1 hour. To the reaction mixture was added an aqueous saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate solution, and then the product was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with an aqueous 10% citric acid solution and saturated brine, dried, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The obtained residue was isolated and purified by silica gel column chromatography (hexane : ethyl acetate = 3 : 1) to obtain crude 4-hydroxy-3-phenylpiperidine-1-carboxylic acid tert-butyl ester (9.32 g, 95%) as colorless oil.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) : δ 1.50 (9H, s), 2.57 (2H, t, J=6.1 Hz), 3.45-3.75 (3H, m), 4.10-4.40 (2H, m), 7.15-7.21 (2H, m), 7.28-7.41 (3H, m).

(Process 7)

[0303] To a solution of the compound (3.02 g) obtained in Process 6 in DMF (30 ml), sodium hydride (60% in oil, 0.87 g) was added, and then the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 30 minutes. To the reaction solution, 3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl bromide (5.00 g) was added at room temperature, and then the reaction solution was further stirred for 1 hour. The reaction solution was poured into water, and then the product was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with an aqueous 10% citric acid solution and saturated brine, dried, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The obtained residue was isolated and purified by silica gel column chromatography (hexane : ethyl acetate = 10 : 1) to obtain the title compound as colorless oil (4.07 g, 74%).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) : δ 1.46 (9H, s), 1.70 - 1.85 (1H, m), 2.00-2.10 (1H, m), 2.87-2.95 (1H, m), 3.08-3.20 (1H, m), 3.40-3.60 (1H, m), 3.84-3.90 (1H, br s), 3.90-4.20 (2H, m), 4.19 (1H, d, J=12.6 Hz), 4.57 (1H, d, J=12.6 Hz), 7.20-7.40 (5H, m), 7.53 (2H, s), 7.73 (1H, s).

Reference Example 2

4-[(2-Methoxybenzyl)amino]-3-phenylpiperidine-1-carboxylic acid tert-butyl ester

(Process 1)

[0304] A mixed solution of the compound (8.82 g) obtained in Process 5 of Reference Example 1, hydroxylamine hydrochloride (6.67 g) and sodium acetate (7.88 g) in ethanol (50 ml) and water (20 ml) was stirred at 75°C for 1 hour. The reaction mixture was poured into water, and then the product was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with an aqueous saturated ammonium chloride solution and saturated brine, dried, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure to obtain 4-(hydroxyimino)-3-phenylpiperidine-1-carboxylic acid tert-butyl ester as a white paste-like material. The obtained product was used in the next process without further purification.

(Process 2)

[0305] A mixed solution of the compound obtained in Process 1 and Raney nickel (about 30 g) in THF (150 ml) and ethanol (150 ml) was stirred at 50°C for 6 hours under hydrogen atmosphere of 5 atm. The catalyst was removed by filtration, and then the filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure to obtain 4-amino-3-phenylpiperidine-1-carboxylic acid tert-butyl ester (8.79 g) as colorless solid matter. The obtained product was used in the next process without further purification.

(Process 3)

[0306] To a mixed solution of the compound (4.00 g) obtained in Process 2 and *o*-anisaldehyde (1.97 g) in acetic acid (0.15 ml) and dichloromethane (40 ml), NaBH(OAc)₃ (9.20 g) was added, and the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 14 hours. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and then the residue was poured into a mixed solution of ethyl acetate and water. The organic layer was washed with an aqueous saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate solution and saturated brine, dried, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The obtained residue was isolated and purified by silica gel column chromatography (hexane : ethyl acetate = 2 : 1) to obtain the cis-form of the title compound as colorless oil (3.41 g, 76%) and the trans-form of the title compound as colorless oil (0.96 g, 16%), respectively.

Cis-form: R_f = 0.6 (hexane : ethyl acetate = 1 : 2).

Trans-form: R_f = 0.2 (hexane : ethyl acetate = 1 : 2).

Reference Example 3

cis-3-Benzhydryl-4-[[3,5-bis (trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]piperidine-1-carboxylic acid tert-butyl ester

(Process 1)

[0307] 1-Acetyl-4-piperidinone (77 g) was dissolved in dichloromethane (300 ml), and trimethylsilyltrifluoromethanesulfonate (200 ml) and benzhydrol (92 g) were added thereto with stirring under ice-cooling. The mixture was allowed to stand at room temperature overnight, and then water (500 ml) and sodium acetate (50 g) were added thereto and the reaction mixture was vigorously stirred. The dichloromethane layer was preparatively separated, washed with an aqueous sodium bicarbonate solution, dried, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was treated with ethyl ether to obtain 1-acetyl-3-benzhydryl-4-piperidinone as colorless crystals (132.6 g, 86%).

Melting point: 133 - 136°C.

IR (KBr) 3060, 3025, 2900, 2860, 1715, 1640, 1490, 1450, 1420, 1250, 980, 745, 705, 695 cm⁻¹.

(Process 2)

[0308] To the compound (10.2 g) obtained in Process 1 were added water (200 ml) and concentrated hydrochloric acid (200 ml), and heated for 5 hours. The reaction mixture was further stirred at 80°C overnight, and then filtered in a heated state and the filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue (crystal) was suspended in ethanol and filtered to obtain 3-benzhydryl-4-piperidone hydrochloride as colorless crystals (8.00 g, 80%).

Melting point: 208 - 210°C.

IR (KBr) 2980, 2800, 2710, 1735, 1590, 1450, 1385, 1170, 755, 710, 700, 540 cm⁻¹.

(Process 3)

[0309] To a solution of the compound (7.55 g) obtained in Process 2 and Et₃N (6.97 ml) in DMF (350 ml), di-tert-butyl dicarbonate (6.00 g) was added, and the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 5 hours. The reaction mixture was poured into water, and then the product was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with an aqueous 10% citric acid solution and saturated brine, dried, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was crystallized from diethyl ether to obtain 3-benzhydryl-4-oxopiperidine-1-carboxylic acid tert-butyl ester as white powder (8.86 g, 97%).

(Process 4)

[0310] To a solution of the compound (4.50 g) obtained in Process 3 in THF (80 ml), a solution of 1 M *L*-selectride/

THF (18.5 ml) was added at -78°C, and the reaction solution was stirred at 0°C for 3 hours. To the reaction solution was added an aqueous saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate solution, and then the product was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with an aqueous 10% citric acid solution and saturated brine, dried, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure to obtain crude 3-benzhydryl-4-hydroxypiperidine-1-carboxylic acid tert-butyl ester (4.50 g, 99%) as colorless amorphous. The obtained product was used in the next process without further purification.

(Process 5)

[0311] To a solution of the compound (1.66 g) obtained in Process 4 in DMF (30 ml), sodium hydride (60% in oil, 0.90 g) was added, and then the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 30 minutes. To the reaction solution, 3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl bromide (6.89 g) and sodium iodide (3.37 g) were added at room temperature, and then the reaction solution was further stirred for 3 hours. The reaction solution was poured into water, and then the product was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with an aqueous 10% citric acid solution and saturated brine, dried, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure to obtain yellow oil of the crude title compound. The obtained compound was used in the next process without purification.

MS (ESI+): 594 (M+H).

Reference Example 4

cis-3-Benzhydryl-4-[[3-fluoro-5-(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]piperidine-1-carboxylic acid tert-butyl ester

[0312] To a solution of the compound (1.29 g) obtained in Process 4 of Reference Example 3 in DMF (30 ml), sodium hydride (60% in oil, 0.70 g) was added, and then the reaction solution was stirred at room temperature for 30 minutes. To the reaction solution, 3-fluoro-5-(trifluoromethyl)benzyl bromide (4.50 g) and sodium iodide (2.62 g) were added at room temperature, and then the reaction solution was further stirred for 3 hours. Then, the mixture was treated in the same manner as in Process 5 of Reference Example 3 to obtain yellow oil of the crude title compound. The obtained compound was used in the next process without purification.

MS (ESI+): 544 (M+H).

Reference Example 5

cis-3-Benzhydryl-4-[[3-(trifluoromethoxy)benzyl]oxy]piperidine-1-carboxylic acid tert-butyl ester

[0313] To a solution of the compound (1.50 g) obtained in Process 4 of Reference Example 3 in DMF (40 ml), sodium hydride (60% in oil, 0.82 g) was added, and then the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 30 minutes. To the reaction solution, 3-(trifluoromethoxy)benzyl bromide (5.20 g) and sodium iodide (3.06 g) were added at room temperature, and then the reaction mixture was further stirred for 3 hours. Then, the mixture was treated in the same manner as in Process 5 of Reference Example 3 to obtain yellow oil of the crude title compound. The obtained compound was used in the next process without purification.

MS (ESI+) : 542 (M+H).

Reference Example 6

cis-3-Benzhydryl-4-[[4-(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]piperidine-1-carboxylic acid tert-butyl ester

[0314] To a solution of the compound (1.50 g) obtained in Process 4 of Reference Example 3 in DMF (40 ml), sodium hydride (60% in oil, 0.82 g) was added, and then the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 30 minutes. To the reaction solution, 4-(trifluoromethyl)benzyl bromide (4.88 g) and sodium iodide (3.06 g) were added at room temperature, and then the reaction mixture was further stirred for 3 hours. Then, the mixture was treated in the same manner as in Process 5 of Reference Example 3 to obtain yellow oil of the crude title compound. The obtained compound was used in the next process without purification.

MS (ESI+) : 526 (M+H).

Reference Example 7

5-(5-(Trifluoromethyl)-1H-tetrazol-1-yl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzofuran-7-carbaldehyde

(Process 1)

[0315] To a solution of 2,3-dihydro-1-benzofuran-5-amine (4.5 g) and Et₃N (6.1 ml) in dichloromethane (40 ml), trifluoroacetic anhydride (6.2 ml) was added at 0°C, and the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 2 hours. The reaction mixture was poured into water, and then the product was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with an aqueous saturated ammonium chloride solution and saturated brine, dried, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure to obtain N-(2,3-dihydro-1-benzofuran-5-yl)-2,2,2-trifluoroacetamide (7.1 g) as pale orange crystals.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ 3.23 (2H, t, J=8.7 Hz), 4.60 (2H, t, J=8.7 Hz), 6.76 (1H, d, J=8.1 Hz), 7.12 (1H, dd, J=8.7, 2.4 Hz), 7.51 (1H, m), 7.65-7.80 (1H, br).

(Process 2)

[0316] To a solution of the compound (6.9 g) obtained in Process 1 in carbon tetrachloride (90 ml), triphenylphosphine (12.6 g) was added at room temperature, and the reaction mixture was stirred at 95°C for 14 hours. The reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure, and then the residue was dissolved in DMF (70 ml). The DMF solution was added dropwise to a solution of sodium azide (3.3 g) in DMF (50 ml) at 0°C, and the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1 hour. The reaction mixture was poured into water, and then the product was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with an aqueous saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate solution and saturated brine, dried, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The obtained residue was isolated and purified by silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate : hexane = 1 : 20 → 1 : 2) to obtain the title compound (2.2 g) as white crystals.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ 3.33 (2H, t, J=9.0 Hz), 4.73 (2H, t, J=9.0 Hz), 6.92 (1H, dd, J=8.7, 0.6 Hz), 7.17-7.21 (1H, dd like), 7.24-7.28 (1H, m).

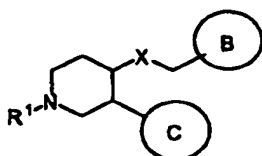
(Process 3)

[0317] To a solution of the compound (3.8 g) obtained in Process 2 in polyphosphoric acid (52 ml), hexamethylene tetramine (10.2 g) was added, and the reaction mixture was stirred at 100°C for 48 hours. The reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure, and then the residue was dissolved in ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with an aqueous saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate solution and brine, dried, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The obtained residue was treated with 4 N hydrochloric acid/ethyl acetate solution (1.0 ml) to obtain the title compound as colorless crystals (1.65 g, 47%).

[0318] ¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) : δ 3.41 (2H, t, J=8.7 Hz), 4.93 (2H, t, J=8.7 Hz), 7.46-7.47 (1H, m), 7.71-7.72 (1H, m), 10.24 (1H, s).

[0319] The compounds of the following Reference Examples were synthesized by reacting and treating in the same manner as in the method described in Reference Example 1 using ethyl phenylacetate derivatives.

[Table 1]



Ref. Ex. No.	Stereochemistry	R¹	X	B	C	MS (ESI) (M+H)⁺
8	(±)-cis	Boc	O			572
9	(±)-cis	Boc	O			518
10	(±)-cis	Boc	O			518
11	(±)-cis	Boc	O			522

Reference Example 12

cis-4-[[3,5-Bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-3-(4-fluorophenyl)-1-carboxylic acid tert-butyl ester

(Process 1)

[0320] (±)-BINAP (0.90 g), sodium tert-butoxide (5.02 g), tris(dibenzylideneacetone)dipalladium (0) (0.55 g) and toluene (200 ml) were mixed under nitrogen atmosphere, and 4-fluorobromobenzene (10.54 g), and then tert-butyl 4-oxo-1-piperidinecarboxylate (8.0 g) were added thereto. The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 5 minutes, and then at 60°C for 7 hours (under nitrogen atmosphere). After cooling to room temperature, the reaction solution was washed with water and saturated brine, dried, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The obtained residue was isolated and purified by silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate : hexane = 1 : 4) to obtain tert-butyl 3-(4-fluorophenyl)-4-oxo-1-piperidinecarboxylate (1.46 g) as colorless crystals.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) : δ 1.50 (9H, s), 2.52-2.59 (2H, m), 3.44-3.51 (2H, m), 3.67-3.71 (1H, m), 4.18-4.21 (1H, m), 4.27 (1H, br.), 7.02-7.17 (4H, m).

(Process 2)

[0321] To a solution of the compound (1.20 g) obtained in Process 1 in THF (12 ml), a solution of 1 M K-selectride/THF (7 ml) was added at -78°C, and the reaction mixture was stirred at 0°C for 1 hour. To the reaction solution, water was added, and the product was extracted with ethyl acetate. The obtained organic layer was washed with an aqueous saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate solution and saturated brine, dried, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The obtained residue was isolated and purified by silica gel column chromatography (hexane : ethyl acetate = 2 : 1), and crystallized from hexane to obtain tert-butyl cis-3-(4-fluorophenyl)-4-hydroxy-1-piperidinecarboxylate (657 mg) as colorless crystals.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) : δ 1.34 (1H, d, J=2.9 Hz), 1.47 (9H, s), 1.82-1.89 (2H, m), 2.86-2.89 (1H, m), 3.18-3.25 (1H, m), 3.45 (1H, br) 3.94 (2H, br), 4.08-4.09 (1H, m), 7.02-7.07 (2H, m), 7.20-7.24 (2H, m).

(Process 3)

[0322] To a solution of the compound (600 mg) obtained in Process 2 in DMF (12 ml), sodium hydride (60% in oil, 203 mg) was added, and then the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 45 minutes. To the reaction solution, sodium iodide (914 mg) and 3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl bromide (1.25 g) were added at room temperature, and then the reaction mixture was further stirred for 2.5 hours. To the reaction solution, water was added, and the product was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with an aqueous 3% potassium hydrogensulfate solution and saturated brine, dried, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The obtained residue was isolated and purified by silica gel column chromatography (hexane : ethyl acetate = 4 : 1) to obtain the title compound as colorless amorphous (920 mg).

MS (ESI+): 522 (M+H).

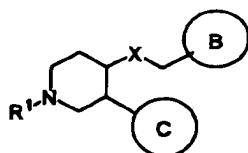
[0323] The compounds of the following Reference Examples were synthesized by reacting and treating in the same manner as in the method described in Reference Example 12 using tert-butyl 4-oxo-1-piperidinecarboxylate and the respective corresponding halogenated compounds (4-fluoro-2-methylbromobenzene and 2-chloropyridine).

[Table 2]

Ref. Ex. No.	Stereo-chemistry	R ¹	X	B	C	MS (ESI) (M+H) ⁺
12	(±)- <i>cis</i>	Boc	O			522
13	(±)- <i>cis</i>	Boc	O			536
14	(±)- <i>cis</i>	Boc	O			505

[0324] The compounds of the following Reference Examples were synthesized by reacting and treating in the same manner as in the method described in Process 7 of Reference Example 1 using the compound obtained in Process 6 of Reference Example 1 and the respective corresponding benzyl methanesulfonate derivatives or benzyl bromide derivatives.

[Table 3]



Ref. Ex. No.	Stereochemistry	R ¹	X	B	C	MS (ESI) (M+H) ⁺
15	(±)- <i>cis</i>	Boc	O			482
16	(±)- <i>cis</i>	Boc	O			436
17	(±)- <i>cis</i>	Boc	O			396
18	(±)- <i>cis</i>	Boc	O			454
19	(±)- <i>cis</i>	Boc	O			454
20	(±)- <i>cis</i>	Boc	O			514, 516
21	(±)- <i>cis</i>	Boc	O			504
22	(±)- <i>cis</i>	Boc	O			450

Reference Example 23

cis-4-[[3-Nitro-5-(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-3-phenylpiperidine

(Process 1)

[0325] The compound (150 mg) obtained in Process 6 of Reference Example 1 and 3-nitro-5-(trifluoromethyl)benzyl methanesulfonate (178 mg) were dissolved in dichloromethane (10 ml), an aqueous 10% sodium hydroxide solution (10 ml), sodium iodide (325 mg) and tetra-n-butylammonium hydrogen sulfate (368 mg) were added thereto and the reaction mixture was stirred at 50°C for 12 hours. To the reaction solution, water was added, and the reaction solution was extracted with dichloromethane. The obtained organic layer was dried, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The obtained residue was isolated and purified by silica gel column chromatography (hexane : ethyl

acetate = 4 : 1) to obtain the title compound as colorless amorphous.
MS (ESI+): 481 (M+H).

Reference Example 24

4-Nitrophenyl 4-acetyl-1-piperazinecarboxylate

[0326] A solution of 1-acetyl-piperazine (1.30 g) and Et₃N (1.23 g) in dichloromethane (10 ml) was added dropwise to a solution of 4-nitrophenyl chloroformate (2.05 g) in dichloromethane (20 ml) under ice-cooling. After stirring at 0°C for 30 minutes and at room temperature for 1 hour, water was added to the reaction solution, and the reaction solution was extracted with dichloromethane. The organic layer was washed with an aqueous saturated sodium bicarbonate solution and saturated brine, dried, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The obtained residue was isolated and purified by silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate) to obtain the title compound (1.70 g) as colorless crystals.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ 2.16 (3H, s), 3.59-3.72 (8H, m), 7.31 (2H, d, J=9.0 Hz), 8.27 (2H, d, J=9.0 Hz).

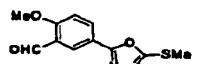
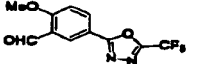
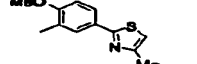
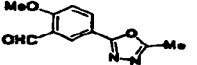
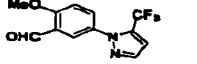
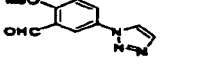
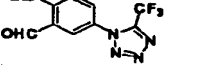
[0327] The compounds of the following Reference Examples were synthesized by reacting and treating in the same manner as in the method described in Reference Example 24 using the respective corresponding amine derivatives.

[Table 4]

Ref. Ex. No.	Structural formula	¹ H-NMR (CDCl ₃): δ
24		2. 16 (3H, s), 3. 59-3. 72 (8H, m), 7. 31 (2H, d, J=9. 0Hz), 8. 27 (2H, d, J=9. 0Hz)
25		3. 88-3. 99 (2H, m), 5. 46 (1H, brs), 7. 35 (2H, d, J=9. 0Hz), 8. 27 (2H, d, J=9. 0Hz)
26		0. 60-0. 69 (2H, m), 0. 79-0. 96 (2H, m), 2. 70-2. 71 (1H, m), 5. 41 (1H, brs), 7. 29 (2H, d, J=9. 3Hz), 8. 22 (2H, d, J=9. 3Hz)
27		1. 47 (9H, s), 1. 30-1. 50 (3H, m), 1. 95-2. 10 (2H, m), 2. 89 (1H, t, J=12Hz), 3. 68-3. 77 (1H, m), 4. 07-4. 20 (2H, m), 7. 32 (2H, d, J=9. 0Hz), 8. 25 (2H, d, J=9. 0Hz)

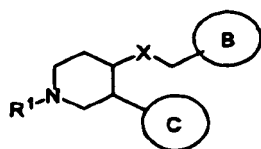
[0328] The compounds of the following Reference Examples were synthesized by reacting and treating in the same manner as in the method described in Process 3 of Reference Example 7 using the respective corresponding anisole derivatives or ethoxybenzene derivatives.

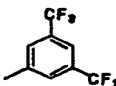

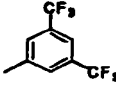

[Table 5]

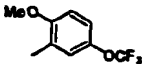

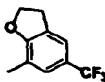

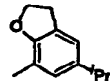

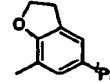

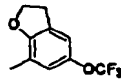

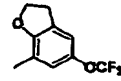

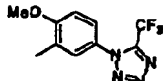

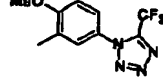

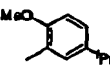

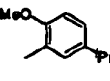

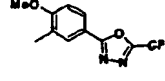

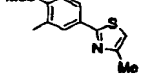

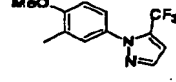

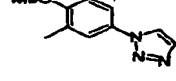

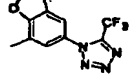

Ref. Ex. No.	Structural formula	¹ H-NMR (CDCl ₃): δ
28		2. 78(3H, s), 4. 04(3H, s), 7. 17(1H, d, J=8. 7Hz), 8. 26(1H, dd, J=8. 7, 2. 7Hz), 8. 39(1H, d, J=2. 7Hz), 10. 49(1H, s)
29		4. 07(3H, s), 7. 21(1H, d, J=8. 7Hz), 8. 37(1H, dd, J=2. 4Hz), 8. 53(1H, d, J=2. 4Hz), 10. 61(1H, s)
30		2. 50(3H, s), 3. 99(3H, s), 6. 86(1H, s), 7. 07(1H, d, J=8. 7Hz), 8. 21(1H, dd, J=8. 7, 2. 4Hz), 8. 31(1H, d, J=2. 4Hz), 10. 49(1H, s)
31		2. 61(3H, s), 4. 03(3H, s), 7. 14(1H, d, J=8. 7Hz), 8. 29(1H, dd, J=8. 7, 2. 1Hz), 8. 41(1H, d, J=2. 1Hz), 10. 48(1H, s)
32		4. 02(3H, s), 6. 81(1H, dd, J=1. 8, 0. 3Hz), 7. 11(1H, d, J=8. 7Hz), 7. 66(1H, dd, J=8. 7, 2. 4Hz), 7. 70(1H, m), 7. 95(1H, d, J=2. 4Hz), 10. 49(1H, s)
33		4. 03(3H, s), 7. 19(1H, d, J=9. 2Hz), 7. 86(1H, d, J=1. 2Hz), 8. 01(1H, d, J=1. 2Hz), 8. 04(1H, d, J=2. 8Hz), 8. 12(1H, dd, J=9. 2, 2. 8Hz), 10. 51(1H, s)
34		1. 67(3H, t, J=7. 1Hz), 4. 29(2H, q, J=7. 1Hz), 7. 20(1H, d, J=9. 0Hz), 7. 63(1H, dd, J=9. 0, 3. 0Hz), 7. 95(1H, d, J=3. 0Hz), 10. 51(1H, s)

[0329] The compounds of the following Reference Examples were synthesized from the compound obtained in Process 2 of Reference Example 2 as a starting material by reacting and treating in the same manner as in the method described in Process 3 of Reference Example 2 using benzaldehyde derivatives obtained in Reference Example 7 or 28 to 34 or known benzaldehyde derivatives.

[Table 6]



Ref. Ex. No.	Stereochemistry	R ¹	X	B	C	MS (ESI) (M+H) ⁺
35	(±)-cis	Boc	NH			503
36	(±)-trans	Boc	NH			503

5	37	(±)- <i>cis</i>	Boc	NH			481
10	38	(±)- <i>cis</i>	Boc	NH			477
15	39	(±)- <i>cis</i>	Boc	NH			451
20	40	(±)- <i>trans</i>	Boc	NH			451
25	41	(±)- <i>cis</i>	Boc	NH			493
30	42	(±)- <i>trans</i>	Boc	NH			493
35	43	(±)- <i>cis</i>	Boc	NH			533
40	44	(±)- <i>trans</i>	Boc	NH			533
45	45	(±)- <i>cis</i>	Boc	NH			439
50	46	(±)- <i>trans</i>	Boc	NH			439
55	47	(±)- <i>cis</i>	Boc	NH			533
	48	(±)- <i>cis</i>	Boc	NH			494
	49	(±)- <i>cis</i>	Boc	NH			531
	50	(±)- <i>cis</i>	Boc	NH			464
	51	(±)- <i>cis</i>	Boc	NH			545

5	52	(±)-trans	Boc	NH		545
10	53	(±)-cis	Boc	NH		547
15	54	(±)-cis	Boc	NH		559

Reference Example 55

cis-3-Benzyl-4-[[3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]piperidine-1-carboxylic acid tert-butyl ester

(Process 1)

[0330] To a solution of 4-oxopiperidine-1,3-dicarboxylic acid 1-tert-butyl 3-ethyl ester (6.0 g) in DMF (45 ml), sodium hydride (60% in oil, 0.85 g) was added, and then the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 30 minutes. The reaction solution was cooled to 0°C, and then benzyl bromide (2.64 ml) was added thereto, and the reaction solution was stirred at room temperature for 1 hour. The reaction solution was diluted with ethyl acetate, and then sequentially washed with an aqueous 10% citric acid solution, water and saturated brine. The organic layer was dried, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure to obtain 3-benzyl-4-oxopiperidine-1,3-dicarboxylic acid 1-tert-butyl 3-ethyl ester as colorless crystals (7.19 g, 90%).

Melting point: 91 - 94°C.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ 1.15 (3H, t, J=7.2 Hz), 1.45 (9H, s), 2.3-2.5 (1H, m), 2.6-2.8 (1H, m), 2.95-3.25 (3H, m), 3.26 (1H, d, J=14 Hz), 4.07 (2H, q, J=7.2 Hz), 4.1-4.3 (1H, m), 4.5-4.7 (1H, m), 7.1-7.3 (5H, m).

(Process 2)

[0331] A mixture of the compound (6.0 g) obtained in Process 1, methanol (100 ml) and 6 N hydrochloric acid (250 ml) was stirred at 110°C for 24 hours. To the reaction solution, concentrated hydrochloric acid (100 ml) was added, and the reaction mixture was further stirred at 110°C for 24 hours. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and then an aqueous 4 N sodium hydroxide solution-ice was added to the residue to make it basic, and the mixture was extracted with dichloromethane. The extract was washed with saturated brine, dried, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The obtained residue was dissolved in THF (60 ml), cooled to 0°C, and then di-tert-butyl dicarbonate (5.0 ml) was added thereto, and the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1 hour.

[0332] The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and then the obtained residue was isolated and purified by silica gel column chromatography (hexane : ethyl acetate = 4 : 1) to obtain 3-benzyl-4-oxopiperidine-1-carboxylic acid tert-butyl ester as white crystals (4.20 g, 87%).

Melting point: 74 - 75°C.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃): δ 1.42 (9H, s), 2.43-2.60 (3H, m), 2.70 (1H, m), 2.97 (1H, dd, J=13.2, 9.8 Hz), 3.14-3.41 (2H, m), 3.9-4.2 (2H, m), 7.15-7.35 (5H, m).

(Process 3)

[0333] To a solution of the compound (4.02 g) obtained in Process 2 in THF (60 ml), 1 M *K*-selectride/THF solution (20 ml) was added at -78°C, and the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1 hour. To the reaction mixture was added an aqueous saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate solution, and then the product was extracted with ethyl acetate. The extract was sequentially washed with an aqueous saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate solution, an aqueous 10% citric acid solution and saturated brine, dried, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The obtained residue was isolated and purified by silica gel column chromatography (hexane : ethyl acetate = 3 : 1) to obtain cis-3-benzyl-4-hydroxypiperidine-1-carboxylic acid tert-butyl ester (4.07 g, quantitative) as colorless oil. The obtained product was used in the next process without further purification.

(Process 4)

[0334] To a solution of the compound (3.82 g) obtained in Process 3 in DMF (30 ml), sodium hydride (60% in oil, 0.84 g) was added, and then the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 30 minutes. The reaction solution was cooled to 0°C, and then 3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl bromide (6.03 g) was added thereto, and the obtained mixture was stirred at room temperature for 2 hours. The reaction solution was diluted with ethyl acetate, and then sequentially washed with water and saturated brine. The organic layer was dried, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The obtained residue was isolated and purified by silica gel column chromatography (hexane : ethyl acetate = 5 : 1) to obtain the title compound as pale yellow oil (4.53 g, 67%).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ 1.40-1.70 (1H, m), 1.45 (9H, s), 1.85-2.10 (2H, m), 2.55-2.85 (2H, m), 3.00-3.80 (4H, m), 4.46 (1H, d, J=12.8 Hz), 4.69 (1H, d, J=12.8 Hz), 7.10-7.35 (5H, m), 7.83 (3H, s).

Reference Example 56

(+)-cis-tert-Butyl 4-amino-3-phenylpiperidine-1-carboxylate

[0335] A solution of the compound (60.6 g) obtained in Process 5 of Reference Example 1, (S)-1-phenylethylamine (40 g), aluminium chloride (1.5 g) in toluene (750 ml) was stirred at reflux temperature for 8 hours under argon air flow. The reaction solution was azeotropically dehydrated and reacted in Dean-Stark reflux tube with adding toluene (1000 ml). The reaction solution was concentrated under reduced pressure.

[0336] Raney nickel (110 g, water contained) was washed with ethanol, and then a solution thereof in ethanol (500 ml) was prepared. The previous residue was added thereto, and then the reaction mixture was stirred at 25°C for 62 hours under hydrogen pressure of 0.5 MPa. Raney nickel was removed by decantation, and the supernatant was concentrated under reduced pressure. To the residue was added ethyl acetate, and then the precipitated crystal was filtered. The filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography (hexane : ethyl acetate = 3 : 1) to obtain yellow oil (77 g).

[0337] The obtained residue (77 g) was added to palladium carbon (5 wt%, 11.1 g) in ethanol (500 ml), and then, the reaction mixture was stirred at 45°C for 13 hours under hydrogen pressure of 0.5 MPa. The palladium carbon was removed by filtration, and the filtrate was concentrated and dried. The residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography (hexane : ethyl acetate = 2 : 1 → only ethyl acetate → ethyl acetate : methanol = 2 : 1) to obtain the title compound as colorless powder (52.2 g).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) : δ 0.87 (1H, brs), 1.20 (1H, brs), 1.46 (9H, s), 1.61 (1H, m), 1.88 (1H, m), 2.93 (1H, m), 3.30-4.11 (5H, m), 7.00-7.52 (5H, m).

[α]_D²⁵ +103° (c 1.0, CHCl₃).

Optical yield: 98.3%ee

High performance liquid chromatography condition

[0338]

Column: CHIRAPAK AD-RH (Daicel Chemical Industries, Ltd.)

Solvent: phosphate buffer (20 mM disodium hydrogenphosphate)/acetonitrile (volume ratio: 60/40)

Flow rate: 0.6 ml/min

Detection: UV (220 nm)

Temperature: 30°C

Retention time: 15 min (99.1%), 31 min (0.9%)

Reference Example 57

(-)-cis-tert-Butyl 4-amino-3-phenylpiperidine-1-carboxylate

[0339] Under argon air flow, the compound (2.07 g) obtained in Process 5 of Reference Example 1 and (R)-1-phenylethylamine (1.36 g) and aluminium chloride (0.05 g) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Reference Example 56 to obtain the title compound as colorless powder (1.44 g).

Optical yield: 97.3%ee

Reference Example 58

cis-tert-Butyl 4-amino-3-phenylpiperidine-1-carboxylate

[0340] Under argon air flow, the compound (0.55 g) obtained in Process 5 of Reference Example 1, (R)-1-naphthylethylamine (0.41 g) and aluminium chloride (0.013 g) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Reference Example 56 to obtain the title compound as colorless powder (0.31 g).

Optical yield: 96.9%ee.

Reference Example 59

cis-tert-Butyl 4-amino-3-phenylpiperidine-1-carboxylate

[0341] Under argon air flow, the compound (0.55 g) obtained in Process 5 of Reference Example 1, (R)-4-tolylethylamine (0.32 g) and aluminium chloride (0.013 g) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Reference Example 56 to obtain the title compound as colorless powder (0.14 g).

Optical yield: 87.9%ee.

Example 1

cis-4-[[3,5-Bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-3-phenylpiperidine hydrochloride

[0342] To the compound (4.00 g) obtained in Reference Example 1, trifluoroacetic acid (20 ml) was added at 0°C, and the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 30 minutes. The reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure, and then the residue was dissolved in ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with an aqueous saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate solution and brine, dried, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The obtained residue was treated with a 4 N hydrochloric acid/ethyl acetate solution (1.0 ml) to obtain the title compound as colorless crystals (1.65 g, 47%).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) : δ 2.15-2.42 (2H, m), 3.20-3.72 (5H, m), 3.90 (1H, s), 4.13 (1H, d, J=12.3 Hz), 4.52 (1H, d, J=12.3 Hz), 7.16-7.34 (5H, m), 7.45 (2H, s), 7.74 (1H, s), 9.60-10.00 (2H, br).

Example 2

cis-1-Acetyl-4-[[3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-3-phenylpiperidine

[0343] To a solution of the compound (0.15 g) obtained in Example 1 in THF (5.0 ml), Et₃N (0.15 ml) was added, acetyl chloride (0.040 ml) was added at 0°C, and the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1 hour. The reaction mixture was poured into water, and then the product was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with an aqueous 10% citric acid solution and saturated brine, dried, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The obtained residue was isolated and purified by silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate : hexane = 1 : 1 → 1 : 0) to obtain the title compound as colorless oil (0.10 g, 66%).

HPLC analysis (Condition A): Purity 73% (Retention time: 3.77 minutes)

MS (ESI+): 446 (M+H)

Example 3

cis-1-Benzoyl-4-[[3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-3-phenylpiperidine

[0344] The compound (0.15 g) obtained in Example 1 and benzoyl chloride (0.060 ml) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 2 to obtain the title compound as colorless oil (0.16 g, 91%).

HPLC analysis (Condition A): Purity 91% (Retention time: 4.11 minutes)

MS (ESI+): 508 (M+H)

Example 4

cis-4-[[3,5-Bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-1-methylsulfonyl-3-phenylpiperidine

[0345] The compound (0.15 g) obtained in Example 1 and methylsulfonyl chloride (0.040 ml) were reacted and treated

in the same manner as in the method described in Example 2 to obtain the title compound as colorless oil (0.093 g, 57%).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) : δ 1.86-2.26 (2H, m), 2.84 (3H, s), 2.98-3.18 (2H, m), 3.42 (1H, t, J=11.5 Hz), 3.66-3.94 (3H, m), 4.20 (1H, d, J=12.0 Hz), 4.57 (1H, d, J=12.0 Hz), 7.20-7.35 (5H, m), 7.52 (2H, s), 7.75 (1H, s).

Example 5

cis-4-[[3,5-Bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-3-phenylpiperidine-1-carboxylic acid methyl ester

[0346] The compound (0.15 g) obtained in Example 1 and methyl chloroformate (0.040 ml) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 2 to obtain the title compound as colorless oil (0.11 g, 67%).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) : δ 1.65-1.90 (1H, m), 2.00 - 2.15 (1H, m), 2.80-3.00 (1H, m), 3.21 (1H, t, J=12.0 Hz), 3.57 (1H, t, J=12.0 Hz), 3.71 (3H, s), 3.90 (1H, m), 4.15 (2H, m), 4.19 (1H, d, J=12.4 Hz), 4.58 (1H, d, J=12.4 Hz), 7.20-7.40 (5H, m), 7.53 (2H, s), 7.73 (1H, s).

Example 6

cis-4-[[3,5-Bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-N-methyl-3-phenyl-1-piperidinecarboxamide

[0347] To a solution of the compound (0.20 g) obtained in Example 1 and Et₃N (0.19 ml) in acetonitrile (5 ml), methyl isocyanate (0.050 ml) was added, and the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 14 hours. The reaction mixture was poured into water, and then the product was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with an aqueous 10% citric acid solution and saturated brine, dried, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The obtained residue was isolated and purified by silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate : methanol = 20 : 1) to obtain the title compound as colorless oil (0.20 g, 95%).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) : δ 1.75-1.87 (1H, m), 2.06 (1H, dq, J=14.1, 3.0 Hz), 2.82 (3H, d, J=4.8 Hz), 2.91-2.98 (1H, m), 3.21 (1H, dt, J=13.2, 3.0 Hz), 3.58-3.67 (1H, m), 3.76-3.82 (1H, m), 3.90-3.96 (2H, m), 4.20 (1H, d, J=12.6 Hz), 4.42-4.50 (1H, m), 4.58 (1H, d, J=12.6 Hz), 7.23-7.35 (5H, m), 7.53 (2H, s), 7.74 (1H, s).

Example 7

5-[[cis-4-[[3,5-Bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-3-phenylpiperidinyl]methyl]-2,4-dihydro-3H-1,2,4-triazol-3-one

[0348] To a mixed solution of the compound (0.15 g) obtained in Example 1 and potassium carbonate (0.047 g) in DMF (2 ml) and water (0.02 ml), 5-(chloromethyl)-2,4-dihydro-3H-1,2,4-triazol-3-one (0.046 g) synthesized by the method described in the document (e.g., Tetrahedron Letters, Vol. 41, pages 8661-8664) was added at 0°C, and the reaction mixture was stirred at 0°C for 3 hours. The reaction mixture was poured into water, and then the product was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with saturated brine, dried, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The obtained residue was isolated and purified by silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate : methanol = 20 : 1) to obtain the title compound as colorless crystals (0.050 g, 29%).

Melting point: 89 - 91°C (recrystallized from ethyl acetate - IPE).

Example 8

[cis-4-[[3,5-Bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-3-phenylpiperidinyl]acetic acid ethyl ester

[0349] The compound (0.21 g) obtained in Example 1 and ethyl bromoacetate (0.17 g) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 7 to obtain the title compound as colorless oil (0.10 g, 42%).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) : δ 1.27 (3H, t, J=7.2 Hz), 1.90-2.12 (2H, m), 2.58 (1H, dt, J=3.3, 12.0 Hz), 2.79-2.90 (2H, m), 2.97 (1H, t, J=11.7 Hz), 3.13-3.20 (1H, m), 3.29 (2H, s), 3.80 (1H, q, J=2.7 Hz), 4.19 (2H, q, J=7.0 Hz), 4.08-4.28 (1H, m), 4.55 (1H, d, J=12.3 Hz), 7.20-7.30 (5H, m), 7.54 (2H, s), 7.71 (1H, s).

Example 9

[cis-4-[[3,5-Bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-3-phenylpiperidinyl]acetamide

[0350] The compound (0.15 g) obtained in Example 1 and bromoacetamide (0.094 g) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 7 to obtain the title compound as colorless crystals (0.083 g, 52%).

EP 1 553 084 A1

Melting point: 123 - 125°C (recrystallized from diethyl ether - hexane).

Example 10

[cis-4-[[3,5-Bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-3-phenylpiperidinyl]acetonitrile

[0351] The compound (0.15 g) obtained in Example 1 and bromoacetonitrile (0.082 g) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 7 to obtain the title compound as colorless oil (0.13 g, 86%).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃): δ 1.84-1.97 (1H, m), 2.13 (1H, dq, J=3.6, 14.4 Hz), 2.65-2.84 (3H, m), 3.04-3.20 (2H, m), 3.55 (1H, d, J=16.8 Hz), 3.62 (1H, d, J=16.8 Hz), 3.79 (1H, q like, J=3.0 Hz), 4.21 (1H, d, J=12.6 Hz), 4.56 (1H, d, J=12.6 Hz), 7.22-7.36 (5H, m), 7.52 (2H, s), 7.73 (1H, s).

Example 11

cis-4-[[3,5-Bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-N,N-dimethyl-3-phenyl-1-piperidinecarboxamide

[0352] The compound (0.15 g) obtained in Example 1 and N,N-dimethylcarbamic acid chloride (0.074 g) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 6 to obtain the title compound as colorless oil (0.13 g, 80%).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃): δ 1.82-1.95 (1H, m), 2.04 (1H, dq, J=3.0, 14.1 Hz), 2.80-2.90 (6H, m), 2.92-3.06 (1H, m), 3.15 (1H, dt, J=3.0, 13.2 Hz), 3.56-3.68 (3H, m), 3.90 (1H, q, J=3.0 Hz), 4.17 (1H, d, J=12.9 Hz), 4.57 (1H, d, J=12.9 Hz), 7.20-7.34 (5H, m), 7.52 (2H, s), 7.72 (1H, s).

Example 12

cis-4-[[3,5-Bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-N,3-diphenyl-1-piperidinecarboxamide

[0353] The compound (0.15 g) obtained in Example 1 and phenyl isocyanate (0.074 ml) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 6 to obtain the title compound as colorless oil (0.12 g, 67%).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃): δ 1.80-2.00 (1H, m), 2.10 - 2.20 (1H, m), 2.99-3.05 (1H, m), 3.31 (1H, dt, J=2.7, 12.9 Hz), 3.75 (1H, t, J=12.0 Hz), 3.90-4.00 (2H, m), 4.02-4.12 (1H, m), 4.22 (1H, d, J=12.3 Hz), 4.60 (1H, d, J=12.3 Hz), 6.42 (1H, s), 7.00-7.10 (1H, m), 7.24-7.38 (9H, m), 7.54 (2H, s), 7.75 (1H, s).

Example 13

cis-4-[[3,5-Bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-N-ethyl-3-phenyl-1-piperidinecarboxamide

[0354] The compound (0.20 g) obtained in Example 1 and ethyl isocyanate (0.047 g) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 6 to obtain the title compound as colorless oil (0.12 g, 74%).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃): δ 1.13 (3H, t, J=7.1 Hz), 1.70-1.90 (1H, m), 2.00-2.15 (1H, m), 2.90-3.00 (1H, m), 3.12-3.36 (3H, m), 3.55-3.68 (1H, t like), 3.72-3.84 (1H, dd like), 3.86-4.00 (2H, m), 4.20 (1H, d, J=12.4 Hz), 4.38-4.46 (1H, m), 4.58 (1H, d, J=12.4 Hz), 7.22-7.40 (5H, m), 7.53 (2H, s), 7.73 (1H, s).

Example 14

cis-4-[[3,5-Bis (trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-1-(1H-imidazol-1-ylcarbonyl)-3-phenyl-1-piperidinecarboxamide

[0355] To a solution of the compound (0.15 g) obtained in Example 1 and Et₃N (0.048 ml) in THF (4 ml), N,N'-carbonyldiimidazole (0.071 g) was added, and the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 14 hours. The reaction mixture was poured into water, and then the product was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with an aqueous saturated ammonium chloride solution and saturated brine, dried, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The obtained residue was isolated and purified by silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate : hexane = 4 : 1) to obtain the title compound as colorless crystals (0.12 g, 70%).

Melting point: 105 - 107°C (recrystallized from ethyl acetate - IPE).

Example 15

cis-N-Allyl-4-[[3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-3-phenyl-1-piperidinecarboxamide

(Process 1)

[0356] To a solution of the compound (0.17 g) obtained in Example 14 in acetonitrile (0.6 ml), methyl iodide (0.085 ml) was added, and the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 14 hours. The reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure to obtain 1-[[4-[[3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-3-phenylpiperidin-1-yl]carbonyl]-3-methyl-1H-imidazol-3-ium iodide as pale yellow amorphous. The obtained product was used in the next process without further purification.

(Process 2)

[0357] To a solution of the compound obtained in Process 1 in dichloromethane (1 ml), allylamine (0.040 ml) and Et₃N (0.048 ml) were added, and the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 14 hours. The reaction mixture was poured into water, and then the product was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with an aqueous 10% citric acid solution and saturated brine, dried, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The obtained residue was isolated and purified by silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate : hexane = 4 : 1) to obtain the title compound as colorless oil (0.090 g, 54%).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) : δ 1.75-1.87 (1H, m), 2.02-2.10 (1H, m), 2.91-2.97 (1H, m), 3.22 (1H, dt, J=2.7, 12.9 Hz), 3.65 (1H, d, J=12.3 Hz), 3.77-4.00 (5H, m), 4.19 (1H, d, J=12.6 Hz), 4.50-4.58 (1H, br), 4.57 (1H, d, J=12.6 Hz), 5.07-5.19 (2H, m), 5.81-5.94 (1H, m), 7.20-7.34 (5H, m), 7.52 (2H, s), 7.72 (1H, s).

Example 16

cis-4-[[3,5-Bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-1-(2-methoxybenzyl)-3-phenylpiperidine

[0358] To a solution of the compound (0.20 g) obtained in Example 1, 2-methoxybenzyl alcohol (0.075 g) and diisopropylethylamine (0.24 g) in dichloromethane (2 ml), EPPA (0.20 g) was added, and the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 14 hours. The reaction mixture was poured into water, and then the product was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with an aqueous saturated ammonium chloride solution and saturated brine, dried, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The obtained residue was isolated and purified by silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate : methanol = 20 : 1) to obtain the title compound as colorless oil (0.15 g, 62%).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) : δ 1.85-2.10 (2H, m), 2.45-2.60 (1H, m), 2.70-2.82 (1H, br), 2.88 (2H, d like, J=6.6 Hz), 3.08-3.20 (1H, br), 3.66 (2H, br s), 3.78 (1H, q, J=3.0 Hz), 3.82 (3H, s), 4.17 (1H, d, J=13.2 Hz), 4.54 (1H, d, J=13.2 Hz), 6.86 (1H, d, J=8.1 Hz), 6.91 (1H, dt, J=7.2, 0.9 Hz), 7.18-7.30 (6H, m), 7.38 (1H, d like, J=6.0 Hz), 7.52 (2H, s), 7.70 (1H, s).

Example 17

cis-4-[[3,5-Bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-3-phenyl-1-piperidinecarboxamide

[0359] To a solution of the compound (0.20 g) obtained in Process 1 of Example 15 in THF (1 ml), 28% ammonia water (0.20 ml) was added, and the reaction solution was stirred at room temperature for 14 hours. The reaction solution was treated in the same manner as in the method described in Process 2 of Example 15 to obtain the title compound as colorless oil (0.075 g, 54%).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) : δ 1.78-1.90 (1H, m), 2.05-2.14 (1H, m), 2.93-3.12 (1H, m), 3.24 (1H, dt, J=3.3, 13.2 Hz), 3.68 (1H, d, J=12.3 Hz), 3.78-3.85 (1H, m), 3.88-4.00 (2H, m), 4.20 (1H, d, J=12.6 Hz), 4.48 (2H, br s), 4.58 (1H, d, J=12.6 Hz), 7.20-7.34 (5H, m), 7.52 (2H, s), 7.73 (1H, s).

Example 18

cis-4-[[3,5-Bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-3-phenyl-N-propyl-1-piperidinecarboxamide

[0360] The compound (0.20 g) obtained in Process 1 of Example 15 and propylamine (0.056 g) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Process 2 of Example 15 to obtain the title compound as colorless oil (0.099 g, 64%).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ 0.91 (3H, t, J=7.2 Hz), 1.51 (2H, m), 1.75-1.90 (1H, m), 2.02-2.10 (1H, m), 2.90-3.00 (1H, m), 3.14-3.26 (3H, m), 3.64 (1H, d, J=11.7 Hz), 3.72-3.80 (1H, m), 3.88-3.98 (2H, m), 4.20 (1H, d, J=12.3 Hz), 4.48 (1H, br s), 4.57 (1H, d, J=12.3 Hz), 7.21-7.34 (5H, m), 7.52 (2H, s), 7.72 (1H, s).

5 Example 19

cis-4-[[3,5-Bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-1-(2,5-dimethoxybenzyl)-3-phenylpiperidine

10 [0361] The compound (0.20 g) obtained in Example 1 and 2,5-dimethoxybenzyl alcohol (0.12 g) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 16 to obtain the title compound as colorless oil (0.060 g, 23%).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃): δ 1.80-2.12 (2H, m), 2.42-2.60 (1H, m), 2.70-2.82 (1H, m), 2.84-2.96 (2H, m), 3.06-3.20 (1H, m), 3.63 (2H, s), 3.76 (3H, s), 3.78 (3H, s), 3.74-3.84 (1H, m), 4.18 (1H, d, J=12.8 Hz), 4.55 (1H, d, J=14.8 Hz), 6.69-6.82 (2H, m), 7.02 (1H, d, J=3.0 Hz), 7.20-7.34 (5H, m), 7.53 (2H, s), 7.71 (1H, s).

15 Example 20

cis-4-[[3,5-Bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-3-phenyl-N-(2-phenylethyl)-1-piperidinecarboxamide

20 [0362] The compound (0.20 g) obtained in Process 1 of Example 15 and phenethylamine (0.11 g) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Process 2 of Example 15 to obtain the title compound as colorless oil (0.12 g, 69%).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃): δ 1.71-1.83 (1H, m), 2.00-2.10 (1H, m), 2.75-3.00 (3H, m), 3.18 (1H, dt, J=2.7, 12.9 Hz), 3.50 (2H, q, J=5.7 Hz), 3.60 (1H, d, J=12.0 Hz), 3.72 (1H, dd, J=13.2, 3.3 Hz), 3.80-3.92 (2H, m), 4.19 (1H, d, J=12.3 Hz), 4.47 (1H, t, J=2.6 Hz), 4.57 (1H, d, J=12.6 Hz), 7.17-7.35 (10H, m), 7.53 (2H, s), 7.73 (1H, s).

Example 21

cis-4-[[3,5-Bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-3-phenyl-N-(2-propynyl)-1-piperidinecarboxamide

30 [0363] The compound (0.20 g) obtained in Process 1 of Example 15 and propargylamine (0.052 g) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Process 2 of Example 15 to obtain the title compound as colorless oil (0.11 g, 71%).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃): δ 1.75-1.90 (1H, m), 2.00-2.13 (1H, m), 2.22 (1H, t, J=2.4 Hz), 2.90-3.00 (1H, m), 3.22 (1H, dt, J=3.3, 13.2 Hz), 3.66 (1H, d, J=12.3 Hz), 3.81 (1H, dd, J=13.2, 3.6 Hz), 3.88-4.00 (2H, m), 4.00-4.06 (2H, dd like), 4.20 (1H, d, J=12.3 Hz), 4.58 (1H, d, J=12.6 Hz), 4.63 (1H, t, J=5.1 Hz), 7.22-7.36 (5H, m), 7.53 (2H, s), 7.73 (1H, s).

Example 22

40 cis-4-[[3,5-Bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-N-methoxy-N-methyl-3-phenylpiperidinecarboxamide

[0364] The compound (0.20 g) obtained in Process 1 of Example 15 and N,O-dimethylhydroxyamine hydrochloride (0.092 g) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Process 2 of Example 15 to obtain the title compound as colorless oil (0.11 g, 70%).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃): δ 1.79-1.91 (1H, m), 2.04-2.14 (1H, m), 2.96 (3H, s), 3.09-3.12 (1H, t like), 3.26 (1H, dt, J=2.4, 12.9 Hz), 3.57 (3H, s), 3.67 (1H, d, J=12.6 Hz), 3.90-3.94 (1H, m), 3.98-4.10 (2H, m), 4.19 (1H, d, J=12.3 Hz), 4.58 (1H, d, J=12.3 Hz), 7.20-7.36 (5H, m), 7.53 (2H, s), 7.74 (1H, s).

Example 23

50 cis-N-(2-Methoxybenzyl)-3-phenylpiperidine-4-amine hydrochloride

[0365] To the compound (cis-form, 1.91 g) obtained in Process 3 of Reference Example 2, trifluoroacetic acid (20 ml) was added at 0°C, and the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 10 minutes. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and then the residue was poured into a mixed solution of an aqueous 2 N sodium hydroxide solution and ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with an aqueous saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate solution and saturated brine, dried, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The obtained residue was treated with a 4 N hydrochloric acid/ethyl acetate solution (2.6 ml) to obtain the title compound

as colorless crystals (1.20 g, 67%).

HPLC analysis (Condition A): Purity 80% (Retention time: 0.32 minutes)

MS (ESI+): 297 (M+H)

5 Example 24

trans-N-(2-Methoxybenzyl)-3-phenylpiperidine-4-amine

10 **[0366]** The compound (trans-form, 0.96 g) obtained in Process 3 of Reference Example 2 was reacted in the same manner as in the method described in Example 23. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and then the residue was poured into a mixed solution of an aqueous 2 N sodium hydroxide solution and ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with an aqueous saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate solution and saturated brine, dried, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure to obtain the title compound as colorless crystals (0.42 g, 58%).

15 HPLC analysis (Condition A): Purity 81% (Retention time: 0.31 minutes)

MS (ESI+): 297 (M+H)

Example 25

20 cis-3-Benzhydryl-4-[[3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]piperidine hydrochloride

[0367] To the compound (2.65 g) obtained in Reference Example 3, a 4 N hydrochloric acid/ethyl acetate solution was added, the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 30 minutes, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was crystallized from diethyl ether and washed therewith to obtain the title compound as white powder (1.11 g, 47%).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃): δ 1.80 - 1.88 (1H, t like), 2.20 (1H, d, J=14.4 Hz), 2.69 (1H, d, J=9.9 Hz), 2.82-3.17 (4H, m), 3.48 (1H, br s), 3.92 (1H, d, J=11.4 Hz), 4.08 (1H, d, J=12.3 Hz), 4.66 (1H, d, J=12.3 Hz), 7.13-7.40 (10H, m), 7.99 (2H, s), 8.04 (1H, s), 9.03 (2H, br).

30 Example 26

cis-3-Benzhydryl-4-[[3-fluoro-5-(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]piperidine hydrochloride

35 **[0368]** To the compound (1.92 g) obtained in Reference Example 4, a 4 N hydrochloric acid/ethyl acetate solution was added, and the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 30 minutes, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was crystallized from diethyl ether and washed therewith to obtain the title compound as white powder (0.88 g, 52%).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃): δ 1.77-1.86 (1H, t like), 2.17 (1H, d, J=14.4 Hz), 2.84-3.15 (4H, m), 3.42 (1H, br s), 3.97 (1H, d, J=11.4 Hz), 4.00 (1H, d, J=12.3 Hz), 4.56 (1H, d, J=12.3 Hz), 7.15-7.60 (13H, m), 9.06 (2H, br).

40

Example 27

cis-3-Benzhydryl-4-[[3-(trifluoromethoxy)benzyl]oxy]piperidine hydrochloride

45 **[0369]** To the compound (2.22 g) obtained in Reference Example 5, a 4 N hydrochloric acid/ethyl acetate solution was added, and the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 30 minutes, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was crystallized from IPE and washed therewith to obtain the title compound as white powder (1.31 g, 67%).

50 ¹H-NMR (CDCl₃): δ 1.75 - 1.83 (1H, t like), 2.15 (1H, d, J=14.4 Hz), 2.62-3.15 (5H, m), 3.40 (1H, br s), 3.94 (1H, d, J=12.0 Hz), 3.96 (1H, d, J=11.7 Hz), 4.50 (1H, d, J=11.7 Hz), 7.18-7.52 (14H, m), 9.03 (2H, br).

Example 28

cis-3-Benzhydryl-4-[[4-(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]piperidine hydrochloride

55

[0370] To the compound (2.14 g) obtained in Reference Example 6, a 4 N hydrochloric acid/ethyl acetate solution was added, and the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 30 minutes, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was crystallized from IPE and washed therewith to obtain the title com-

pound as white powder (1.20 g, 64%) .

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) : δ 1.76-1.84 (1H, t like), 2.11-2.20 (1H, t like), 2.70-3.16 (5H, m), 3.40 (1H, br s), 3.98 (1H, d, J=11.7 Hz), 4.55 (1H, d, J=12.3 Hz), 7.16-7.33 (8H, m), 7.43 (2H, d, J=7.5 Hz), 7.55 (2H, d, J=7.8 Hz), 7.71 (2H, d, J=8.1 Hz), 9.08 (2H, br).

5

Example 29

2-[cis-3-Benzhydryl-4-[[3,5-bis (trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]piperidin-1-yl]-2-oxoethanamine

10 **[0371]** To a solution of the compound (31.8 mg) obtained in Example 25 in DMF (2.0 ml), Et₃N (8.4 μl) was added, Boc-glycine (21 mg) and WSC · HCl (23 mg) were added at room temperature and the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 24 hours. The reaction mixture was poured into water, and then the product was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with an aqueous 10% citric acid solution and saturated brine, and dried, and the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and then the residue was purified by preparative HPLC. A
15 4 N hydrochloric acid/ethyl acetate solution was further added thereto, and the reaction mixture was stirred for 1 hour, and then the solvent was evaporated. The obtained residue was dissolved in ethyl acetate, washed with an aqueous saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate solution and brine, dried, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure to obtain the title compound.

Yield: 4.3 mg

20 HPLC analysis (Condition B): Purity 100% (Retention time: 2.05 minutes)

MS (ESI+) : 551 (M+H)

Example 30

25 cis-3-Benzhydryl-4-[[3-fluoro-5-(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-1-(methylsulfonyl)piperidine

[0372] To a solution of the compound (28.8 mg) obtained in Example 26 in THF (2.0 ml), Et₃N (25.1 μl) was added, methylsulfonyl chloride (9.3 μl) was added at 0°C, and the reaction mixture was reacted at room temperature 24 hours. The reaction mixture was poured into water, and then the product was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer
30 was washed with an aqueous 10% citric acid solution and saturated brine, and dried, and the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and then the residue was purified by preparative HPLC to obtain the title compound.

Yield: 18.7 mg

HPLC analysis (Condition B): Purity 98% (Retention time: 2.28 minutes)

MS (ESI+): 522 (M+H)

35

Example 31

cis-3-Benzhydryl-4-[[3,5-bis (trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-N-methyl-1-piperidinecarboxamide

40 **[0373]** To a solution of the compound (31.8 mg) obtained in Example 25 and Et₃N (8.4 μl) in THF (3 ml), methyl isocyanate (6.8 mg) was added, and the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 24 hours. The reaction mixture was poured into water, and then the product was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with an aqueous 10% citric acid solution and saturated brine, and dried, and the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and then the residue was purified by preparative HPLC to obtain the title compound.

45

Yield: 24.1 mg

HPLC analysis (Condition B): Purity 98% (Retention time: 2.28 minutes)

MS (ESI+) : 551 (M+H)

Example 32

50

cis-2-(3-Benzhydryl-4-[[3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]piperidinyl)-N,N-dimethyl-2-oxoethanamine

[0374] To a solution of the compound (31.8 mg) obtained in Example 25 in DMF (2.0 ml), Et₃N (25.1 μl) was added, N,N-dimethylglycine hydrochloride (16.7 mg) and WSC·HCl (23 mg) were added thereto and the reaction mixture was
55 stirred at room temperature for 24 hours. The reaction mixture was poured into water, and then the product was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with an aqueous 10% citric acid solution and saturated brine, and dried, and the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and then the residue was purified by preparative HPLC. The obtained compound was dissolved in ethyl acetate, washed with an aqueous saturated sodium hydrogen

EP 1 553 084 A1

carbonate solution and brine, dried, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure to obtain the title compound.

Yield: 10.8 mg

HPLC analysis (Condition B): Purity 100% (Retention time: 1.92 minutes)

MS (ESI+): 579 (M+H)

Example 33

cis-1-Acetyl-3-benzhydryl-4-[[3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]piperidine

[0375] To a solution of the compound (31.8 mg) obtained in Example 25 in DMF (2.0 ml), Et₃N (8.4 µl) was added, acetic acid (6.9 µl) and WSC-HCl (23 mg) were added thereto and the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 24 hours. The reaction mixture was poured into water, and then the product was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with an aqueous 10% citric acid solution and saturated brine, and dried, and the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and then the residue was purified by preparative HPLC to obtain the title compound.

Yield: 23.7 mg

HPLC analysis (Condition B): Purity 100% (Retention time: 2.32 minutes)

MS (ESI+) : 536 (M+H)

Example 34

cis-3-Benzhydryl-4-[[3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-1-(methoxyacetyl)piperidine

[0376] The compound (31.8 mg) obtained in Example 25 and methoxyacetic acid (9.2 µl) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 33 to obtain the title compound.

Yield: 18.6 mg

HPLC analysis (Condition B): Purity 100% (Retention time: 2.33 minutes)

MS (ESI+) : 566 (M+H)

Example 35

cis-3-Benzhydryl-4-[[3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-1-(methylsulfonyl)piperidine

[0377] The compound (31.8 mg) obtained in Example 25 and methylsulfonyl chloride (9.3 µl) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 30 to obtain the title compound.

Yield: 25.8 mg

HPLC analysis (Condition B): Purity 99% (Retention time: 2.34 minutes)

MS (ESI+) : 572 (M+H)

Example 36

cis-3-Benzhydryl-4-[[3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-1-(2-pyridinylacetyl)piperidine

[0378] The compound (31.8 mg) obtained in Example 25 and 2-pyridineacetic acid hydrochloride (20.8 mg) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 32 to obtain the title compound.

Yield: 5.5 mg

HPLC analysis (Condition B): Purity 100% (Retention time: 1.97 minutes)

MS (ESI+): 613 (M+H)

Example 37

cis-3-Benzhydryl-4-[[3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-1-(1H-imidazol-4-ylacetyl)piperidine

[0379] The compound (31.8 mg) obtained in Example 25 and 4-imidazoleacetic acid hydrochloride (19.5 mg) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 32 to obtain the title compound.

Yield: 2.6 mg

HPLC analysis (Condition B): Purity 98% (Retention time: 2.06 minutes)

EP 1 553 084 A1

MS (ESI+): 602 (M+H)

Example 38

5 cis-3-Benzhydryl-4-[[3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-1-propionylpiperidine

[0380] The compound (31.8 mg) obtained in Example 25 and propionic acid (9.0 μ l) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 33 to obtain the title compound.

Yield: 16.7 mg

10 HPLC analysis (Condition B): Purity 98% (Retention time: 2.39 minutes)

MS (ESI+): 550 (M+H)

Example 39

15 cis-3-Benzhydryl-4-[[3-fluoro-5-(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-N-methyl-1-piperidinecarboxamide

[0381] The compound obtained in Example 26 (28.8 mg) and methyl isocyanate (6.8 mg) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 31 to obtain the title compound.

Yield: 21.3 mg

20 HPLC analysis (Condition B): Purity 100% (Retention time: 2.20 minutes)

MS (ESI+): 501 (M+H)

Example 40

25 cis-3-Benzhydryl-4-[[3-fluoro-5-(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-1-propionylpiperidine

[0382] The compound (28.8 mg) obtained in Example 26 and propionic acid (9.0 μ l) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 33 to obtain the title compound.

Yield: 16.7 mg

30 HPLC analysis (Condition B): Purity 97% (Retention time: 2.32 minutes)

MS (ESI+) : 500 (M+H)

Example 41

35 cis-1-Acetyl-3-benzhydryl-4-[[3-fluoro-5-(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]piperidine

[0383] The compound (28.8 mg) obtained in Example 26 and acetic acid (6.9 μ l) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 33 to obtain the title compound.

Yield: 13.7 mg

40 HPLC analysis (Condition B): Purity 99% (Retention time: 2.25 minutes)

MS (ESI+) : 486 (M+H)

Example 42

45 cis-3-Benzhydryl-4-[[3-fluoro-5-(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-1-(methoxyacetyl)piperidine

[0384] The compound (28.8 mg) obtained in Example 26 and methoxyacetic acid (9.2 μ l) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 33 to obtain the title compound.

Yield: 16.8 mg

50 HPLC analysis (Condition B): Purity 100% (Retention time: 2.25 minutes)

MS (ESI+) : 516 (M+H)

Example 43

55 cis-3-Benzhydryl-4-[[3-fluoro-5-(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-1-(1H-imidazol-4-ylacetyl)piperidine

[0385] The compound (28.8 mg) obtained in Example 26 and 4-imidazoleacetic acid hydrochloride (19.5 mg) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 32 to obtain the title compound.

Yield: 3.1 mg
HPLC analysis (Condition B): Purity 100% (Retention time: 2.00 minutes)
MS (ESI+) : 552 (M+H)

5 Example 44

cis-3-Benzhydryl-1-(1,3-benzodioxol-5-ylcarbonyl)-4-[[3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]piperidine

10 [0386] The compound (31.8 mg) obtained in Example 25 and piperonylic acid (19.9 mg) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 33 to obtain the title compound.

Yield: 22.1 mg
HPLC analysis (Condition B): Purity 95% (Retention time: 2.39 minutes)
MS (ESI+) : 642 (M+H)

15 Example 45

cis-2-(3-Benzhydryl-4-[[3-fluoro-5-(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]piperidinyl)-N,N-dimethyl-2-oxoethanamine

20 [0387] The compound (28.8 mg) obtained in Example 26 and N,N-dimethylglycine hydrochloride (16.7 mg) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 32 to obtain the title compound.

Yield: 13.6 mg
HPLC analysis (Condition B): Purity 100% (Retention time: 1.85 minutes)
MS (ESI+) : 529 (M+H)

25 Example 46

cis-2-(3-Benzhydryl-4-[[3-fluoro-5-(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]piperidinyl)-2-oxoethanamine

30 [0388] The compound (28.8 mg) obtained in Example 26 and Boc-glycine (21.0 mg) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 29 to obtain the title compound.

Yield: 17.8 mg
HPLC analysis (Condition B): Purity 100% (Retention time: 1.97 minutes)
MS (ESI+) : 501 (M+H)

35 Example 47

cis-3-Benzhydryl-1-(methoxyacetyl)-4-[[3-(trifluoromethoxy)benzyl]oxy]piperidine

40 [0389] The compound (27.7 mg) obtained in Example 27 and methoxyacetic acid (9.2 μ l) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 33 to obtain the title compound.

Yield: 16.5 mg
HPLC analysis (Condition B): Purity 99% (Retention time: 2.25 minutes)
MS (ESI+) : 514 (M+H)

45 Example 48

cis-1-Acetyl-3-benzhydryl-4-[[3-(trifluoromethoxy)benzyl]oxy]piperidine

50 [0390] The compound (27.7 mg) obtained in Example 27 and acetic acid (6.9 μ l) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 33 to obtain the title compound.

Yield: 19.4 mg
HPLC analysis (Condition B): Purity 100% (Retention time: 2.25 minutes)
MS (ESI+) : 484 (M+H)

55

Example 49

cis-3-Benzhydryl-1-propionyl-4-[[3-(trifluoromethoxy)benzyl]oxy]piperidine

- 5 **[0391]** The compound (27.7 mg) obtained in Example 27 and propionic acid (9.0 μ l) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 33 to obtain the title compound.

Yield: 15.3 mg

HPLC analysis (Condition B): Purity 96% (Retention time: 2.31 minutes)

MS (ESI+): 498 (M+H)

10

Example 50

cis-3-Benzhydryl-4-[[3-fluoro-5-(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-1-(2-pyridinylacetyl)piperidine

- 15 **[0392]** The compound (28.8 mg) obtained in Example 26 and 2-pyridineacetic acid hydrochloride (20.8 mg) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 32 to obtain the title compound.

Yield: 7.4 mg

HPLC analysis (Condition B): Purity 98% (Retention time: 1.90 minutes)

MS (ESI+): 563 (M+H)

20

Example 51

cis-2-(3-Benzhydryl-4-[[3-(trifluoromethoxy)benzyl]oxy]piperidinyl)-2-oxoethanamine

- 25 **[0393]** The compound (27.7 mg) obtained in Example 27 and Boc-glycine (21.0 mg) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 29 to obtain the title compound.

Yield: 11.7 mg

HPLC analysis (Condition B): Purity 96% (Retention time: 1.97 minutes)

MS (ESI+): 499 (M+H)

30

Example 52

cis-3-Benzhydryl-1-(1,3-benzodioxol-5-ylcarbonyl)-4-[[3-fluoro-5-(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]piperidine

- 35 **[0394]** The compound (28.8 mg) obtained in Example 26 and piperonylic acid (19.9 mg) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 33 to obtain the title compound.

Yield: 15.6 mg

HPLC analysis (Condition B): Purity 100% (Retention time: 2.33 minutes)

MS (ESI+): 592 (M+H)

40

Example 53

cis-3-Benzhydryl-1-(methylsulfonyl)-4-[[4-(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]piperidine

- 45 **[0395]** The compound (28.7 mg) obtained in Example 28 and methylsulfonyl chloride (9.3 μ l) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 30 to obtain the title compound.

Yield: 22.8 mg

HPLC analysis (Condition B): Purity 100% (Retention time: 2.26 minutes)

MS (ESI+): 504 (M+H)

50

Example 54

cis-3-Benzhydryl-1-benzyl-4-[[3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]piperidine

- 55 **[0396]** To a solution of the compound (31.8 mg) obtained in Example 25, diisopropylethylamine (40.5 μ l) and benzyl alcohol (12.4 μ l) in dichloromethane (2.0 ml), EPPA (17.3 μ l) was added, and the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 24 hours. The reaction mixture was poured into water, and then the product was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with an aqueous 10% citric acid solution and saturated brine, and dried, and

EP 1 553 084 A1

the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and then the residue was purified by preparative HPLC to obtain the title compound.

Yield: 4.4 mg

HPLC analysis (Condition B): Purity 99% (Retention time: 1.99 minutes)

MS (ESI+): 584 (M+H)

Example 55

cis-2-(3-Benzhydryl-4-[[4-(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]piperidinyl)-2-oxoethanamine

[0397] The compound (28.7 mg) obtained in Example 28 and Boc-glycine (21.0 mg) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 29 to obtain the title compound.

Yield: 11.1 mg

HPLC analysis (Condition B): Purity 91% (Retention time: 1.96 minutes)

MS (ESI+): 483 (M+H)

Example 56

cis-1-Acetyl-3-benzhydryl-4-[[4-(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]piperidine

[0398] The compound (28.7 mg) obtained in Example 28 and acetic acid (6.9 μ) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 33 to obtain the title compound.

Yield: 12.6 mg

HPLC analysis (Condition B): Purity 100% (Retention time: 2.24 minutes)

MS (ESI+): 468 (M+H)

Example 57

cis-3-Benzhydryl-1-benzyl-4-[[3-fluoro-5-(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]piperidine

[0399] The compound (28.8 mg) obtained in Example 26 and benzyl alcohol (12.4 μ l) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 54 to obtain the title compound.

Yield: 4.3 mg

HPLC analysis (Condition B): Purity 98% (Retention time: 1.93 minutes)

MS (ESI+): 534 (M+H)

Example 58

cis-3-Benzhydryl-N-methyl-4-[[4-(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-1-piperidinecarboxamide

[0400] The compound (28.7 mg) obtained in Example 28 and methyl isocyanate (6.8 mg) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 31 to obtain the title compound.

Yield: 23.5 mg

HPLC analysis (Condition B): Purity 100% (Retention time: 2.19 minutes)

MS (ESI+): 483 (M+H)

Example 59

cis-3-Benzhydryl-1-(2-pyridinylacetyl)-4-[[4-(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]piperidine

[0401] The compound (28.7 mg) obtained in Example 28 and 2-pyridineacetic acid hydrochloride (20.8 mg) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 32 to obtain the title compound.

Yield: 5.0 mg

HPLC analysis (Condition B): Purity 100% (Retention time: 1.89 minutes)

MS (ESI+): 545 (M+H)

Example 60

cis-3-Benzhydryl-1-propionyl-4-[[4-(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]piperidine

[0402] The compound (28.7 mg) obtained in Example 28 and propionic acid (9.0 µl) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 33 to obtain the title compound.

Yield: 14.8 mg

HPLC analysis (Condition B): Purity 99% (Retention time: 2.30 minutes)

MS (ESI+): 482 (M+H)

Example 61

cis-2-(3-Benzhydryl-4-[[4-(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]piperidinyl)-N,N-dimethyl-2-oxoethanamine

[0403] The compound (28.7 mg) obtained in Example 28 and N,N-dimethylglycine hydrochloride (16.7 mg) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 32 to obtain the title compound.

Yield: 6.5 mg

HPLC analysis (Condition B): Purity 98% (Retention time: 1.84 minutes)

MS (ESI+): 511 (M+H)

Example 62

cis-3-Benzhydryl-1-(methoxyacetyl)-4-[[4-(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]piperidine

[0404] The compound (28.7 mg) obtained in Example 28 and methoxyacetic acid (9.2 µl) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 33 to obtain the title compound.

Yield: 13.0 mg

HPLC analysis (Condition B): Purity 99% (Retention time: 2.23 minutes)

MS (ESI+): 498 (M+H)

Example 63

cis-3-Benzhydryl-1-(1H-imidazol-4-ylacetyl)-4-[[4-(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]piperidine

[0405] The compound (28.7 mg) obtained in Example 28 and 4-imidazoleacetic acid hydrochloride (19.5 mg) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 32 to obtain the title compound.

Yield: 1.8 mg

HPLC analysis (Condition B): Purity 100% (Retention time: 1.98 minutes)

MS (ESI+): 534 (M+H)

Example 64

cis-3-Benzhydryl-1-{3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzoyl}-4-[[3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]piperidine

[0406] The compound (31.8 mg) obtained in Example 25 and 3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzoic acid (31.0 mg) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 33 to obtain the title compound.

Yield: 9.8 mg

HPLC analysis (Condition B): Purity 95% (Retention time: 2.57 minutes)

MS (ESI+): 734 (M+H)

Example 65

cis-3-Benzhydryl-1-{3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzoyl}-4-[[3-fluoro-5-(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]piperidine

[0407] The compound (28.8 mg) obtained in Example 26 and 3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzoic acid (31.0 mg) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 33 to obtain the title compound.

Yield: 10.9 mg

HPLC analysis (Condition B): Purity 100% (Retention time: 2.50 minutes)

MS (ESI+) : 684 (M+H)

Example 66

5 cis-3-Benzhydryl-1-[3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzoyl]-4-[[4-(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]piperidine

[0408] The compound (28.7 mg) obtained in Example 28 and 3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzoic acid (31.0 mg) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 33 to obtain the title compound.

Yield: 12.4 mg

10 HPLC analysis (Condition B): Purity 100% (Retention time: 2.49 minutes)

MS (ESI+) : 666 (M+H)

Example 67

15 cis-3-Benzhydryl-1-(1,3-benzodioxol-5-ylcarbonyl)-4-[[4-(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]piperidine

[0409] The compound (28.7 mg) obtained in Example 28 and piperonylic acid (19.9 mg) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 33 to obtain the title compound.

Yield: 12.8 mg

20 HPLC analysis (Condition B): Purity 100% (Retention time: 2.31 minutes)

MS (ESI+) : 574 (M+H)

Example 68

25 cis-3-Benzhydryl-1-[3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzoyl]-4-[[3-(trifluoromethoxy)benzyl]oxy]piperidine

[0410] The compound (27.7 mg) obtained in Example 27 and 3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzoic acid (31.0 mg) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 33 to obtain the title compound.

Yield: 18.2 mg

30 HPLC analysis (Condition B): Purity 99% (Retention time: 2.52 minutes)

MS (ESI+) : 682 (M+H)

Example 69

35 cis-1-[(1-Acetyl-4-piperidiny)carbonyl]-4-[[3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-3-phenylpiperidine

(Process 1)

[0411] To a solution of the compound (0.53 g) obtained in Example 1 in DMF (10 ml), Et₃N (0.17 ml) was added, Boc-isonipecotinic acid (0.41 g), WSC · HCl (0.46 g) and HOBt · H₂O (0.37 g) were added thereto and the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 24 hours. The reaction mixture was poured into water, and then the product was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with an aqueous saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate solution and saturated brine, dried, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The obtained residue was isolated and purified by silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate : hexane = 1 : 3 → 1 : 1) to obtain cis-4-[[4-[[3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-3-phenyl-1-piperidiny]carbonyl]-1-piperidinecarboxylic acid tert-butyl ester as colorless amorphous (0.71 g).

(Process 2)

50 [0412] The compound (0.65 g) obtained in Process 1 and trifluoroacetic acid (8 ml) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 1 to obtain cis-4-[[3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-3-phenyl-1-(4-piperidiny)carbonyl)piperidine hydrochloride as white powder (0.54 g).

(Process 3)

55 [0413] To a solution of the compound (0.27 g) obtained in Process 2 in pyridine (2 ml), N,N-dimethylaminopyridine (0.030 g) and acetic anhydride (0.10 g) were added, and the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 4 hours. The reaction mixture was poured into water, and then the product was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic

EP 1 553 084 A1

layer was washed with an aqueous saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate solution and saturated brine, dried, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The obtained residue was purified by preparative HPLC to obtain the title compound as colorless amorphous (0.21 g).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) : δ 1.60-1.96 (6H, m), 2.00-2.20 (4H, m), 2.58-3.18 (4H, m), 3.28-3.58 (1H, m), 3.76-3.96 (3H, m), 4.19 (1H, dd, J=12.0, 3.0 Hz), 4.51-4.69 (3H, m), 7.21-7.38 (5H, m), 7.52 (2H, s), 7.73 (1H, s).

Example 70

(+)-(3R,4S)-1-[(1-Acetyl-4-piperidiny)carbonyl]-4-[[3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-3-phenylpiperidine

(Process 1)

[0414] A mixture of the compound (1.51 g) obtained in Process 5 of Reference Example 1, [RuCl₂(*R*)-BINAP][(*R*, *R*)-DPEN]] catalyst (0.0055 g), a 1 M solution (5.5 ml) of potassium tert-butoxide in tert-butyl alcohol, 2-propanol (20 ml) and toluene (5 ml) was stirred at 30°C for 2.5 hours under hydrogen atmosphere of 0.7 MPa, after the inner atmosphere was sufficiently replaced with the argon gas. To the reaction mixture, 1 N hydrochloric acid (5 ml) was added, and then the mixture was concentrated and dried under reduced pressure. The residue was dispersed in water and ethyl acetate, the organic layer was separated and washed with saturated brine, dried, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The obtained residue was purified by preparative HPLC to obtain (3R,4S)-4-hydroxy-3-phenyl-1-piperidinecarboxylic acid tert-butyl ester as colorless amorphous (1.08 g).

(Process 2)

[0415] To a solution of the compound (0.70 g) obtained in Process 1 in DMF (7 ml), sodium hydride (60% in oil, 0.25 g) was added, and then the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 30 minutes. To the reaction solution, sodium iodide (1.14 g) and 3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl bromide (1.55 g) were added at room temperature, and then the reaction solution was further stirred for 1 hour. The reaction solution was poured into water, and then the product was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with an aqueous 10% citric acid solution and saturated brine, dried, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The obtained residue was isolated and purified by silica gel column chromatography (hexane : ethyl acetate = 4 : 1) to obtain (3R,4S)-4-[[3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-3-phenylpiperidine-1-carboxylic acid tert-butyl ester as colorless amorphous. The obtained product was used in the next process without further purification.

(Process 3)

[0416] To a solution of the compound obtained in Process 2 in methanol (15 ml), a 4 N hydrochloric acid/ethyl acetate solution (1.5 ml) was added, and the reaction solution was stirred at 70°C for 30 minutes. The reaction solution was concentrated and dried under reduced pressure to obtain (3R,4S)-4-[[3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-3-phenylpiperidine hydrochloride (0.99 g) as white powder. The obtained product was used in the next process without further purification.

(Process 4)

[0417] The compound (0.50 g) obtained in Process 3 and 1-acetyl-piperidine-4-carboxylic acid (0.29 g) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Process 1 of Example 69 to obtain the title compound as colorless amorphous (0.51 g).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) : δ 1.60-1.96 (6H, m), 2.00-2.20 (4H, m), 2.58-3.18 (4H, m), 3.28-3.58 (1H, m), 3.76-3.96 (3H, m), 4.19 (1H, dd, J=12.0, 3.0 Hz), 4.51-4.69 (3H, m), 7.21-7.38 (5H, m), 7.52 (2H, s), 7.73 (1H, s).

[α]_D²⁵ +103.9° (c 1.0, MeOH).

Example 71

cis-4-[[2-Methoxy-5-[5-(trifluoromethyl)-1H-tetrazol-1-yl]benzyl]amino]-N-methyl-3-phenyl-1-piperidinecarboxamide hydrochloride

(Process 1)

[0418] The compound (1.50 g) obtained in Process 2 of Reference Example 2, 2-methoxy-5-(5-(trifluoromethyl)-1H-

tetrazol-1-yl)benzaldehyde (1.33 g) synthesized by the method described in the document (e.g., J. Labelled Cpd. Radiopharm., Vol. 43, pages 29-45), NaBH(OAc)₃ (3.5 g), acetic acid (0.050 ml) and dichloromethane (20 ml) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Process 3 of Reference Example 2 to obtain cis-4-[[2-methoxy-5-[5-(trifluoromethyl)-1H-tetrazol-1-yl]benzyl]amino]-3-phenyl-1-piperidinecarboxylic acid tert-butyl ester as colorless amorphous (1.85 g).

(Process 2)

[0419] The compound (1.85 g) obtained in Process 1 was reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Process 3 of Example 70 to obtain cis-N-[2-methoxy-5-[5-(trifluoromethyl)-1H-tetrazol-1-yl]benzyl]-3-phenyl-4-piperidineamine hydrochloride (1.83 g) as white powder.

(Process 3)

[0420] The compound (0.30 g) obtained in Process 2, methyl isocyanate (0.042 ml) and Et₃N (0.17 ml) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 6 to obtain colorless amorphous.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ 1.65-1.80 (1H, m), 1.83-1.95 (1H, m), 2.80 (3H, d, J=4.8 Hz), 2.94-3.06 (2H, m), 3.35-3.48 (1H, m), 3.55-3.70 (6H, m), 3.76-3.84 (2H, m), 4.45-4.50 (1H, m), 6.75 (1H, d, J=8.7 Hz), 7.02 (1H, d, 2.7 Hz), 7.08-7.28 (6H, m).

[0421] The obtained product was treated with 4 N hydrochloric acid/ethyl acetate (0.13 ml), and recrystallized from ethyl acetate - IPE to obtain the title compound (0.23 g) as white powder.

Melting point: 198 - 200°C.

Example 72

(+)-cis-4-[[2-Methoxy-5-[5-(trifluoromethyl)-1H-tetrazol-1-yl]benzyl]amino]-N-methyl-3-phenyl-1-piperidinecarboxamide hydrochloride

[0422] The compound (0.36 g) obtained in Process 3 of Example 71 was optically resolved with chiral HPLC, and the fractions were concentrated under reduced pressure. The obtained residue was treated with 4 N hydrochloric acid/ethyl acetate (0.070 ml), and recrystallized from ethyl acetate - IPE to obtain the title compound (0.14 g) as white powder.

Chiral HPLC condition

[0423]

Column: CHIRALPAK AD 50 mm ID × 500 mm L

Solvent: hexane/ethanol = 87/13

Flow rate: 70 ml/min

Temperature: 35°C

Detection method: UV 220 nm

$[\alpha]_D^{25} +1.6^\circ$ (c 1.0, MeOH).

Example 73

(-)-cis-4-[[2-Methoxy-5-[5-(trifluoromethyl)-1H-tetrazol-1-yl]benzyl]amino]-N-methyl-3-phenyl-1-piperidinecarboxamide hydrochloride

[0424] The compound (0.36 g) obtained in Process 3 of Example 71 was treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 72 to obtain the title compound (0.13 g) as white powder.

$[\alpha]_D^{25} -2.2^\circ$ (c 1.0, MeOH).

Example 74

cis-N-Ethyl-4-[[2-methoxy-5-[5-(trifluoromethyl)-1H-tetrazol-1-yl]benzyl]amino]-3-phenyl-1-piperidinecarboxamide hydrochloride

[0425] The compound (0.89 g) obtained in Process 2 of Example 71, ethyl isocyanate (0.14 ml) and Et₃N (0.49 ml) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 6 to obtain colorless amorphous.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃): δ 1.12 (3H, t, J=7.2 Hz), 1.65-1.80 (1H, m), 1.85-1.95 (1H, m), 2.95-3.06 (2H, m), 3.22-3.32 (2H, m), 3.36-3.46 (1H, m), 3.55-3.70 (6H, m), 3.76-3.84 (2H, m), 4.36-4.44 (1H, m), 6.84 (1H, d, J=8.7 Hz), 7.04 (1H, d, J=2.7 Hz), 7.12-7.30 (6H, m).

[0426] The obtained product was treated with 4 N hydrochloric acid/ethyl acetate (0.42 ml), and recrystallized from ethyl acetate - IPE to obtain the title compound (0.86 g) as white powder.

Melting point: 143 - 145°C.

Example 75

(+)-cis-N-Ethyl-4-[[2-methoxy-5-[5-(trifluoromethyl)-1H-tetrazol-1-yl]benzyl]amino]-3-phenyl-1-piperidinecarboxamide hydrochloride

[0427] The compound (0.80 g) obtained in Example 74 was optically resolved with chiral HPLC, and the fractions were concentrated under reduced pressure. The obtained residue was treated with 4 N hydrochloric acid/ethyl acetate (0.14 ml), and recrystallized from ethyl acetate - IPE to obtain the title compound (0.25 g) as white powder.

Chiral HPLC condition

[0428]

Column: CHIRALPAK AD 50 mm ID × 500 mm L

Solvent: hexane/ethanol = 87/13

Flow rate: 70 ml/min

Temperature: 35°C

Detection method: UV 220 nm

[α]_D²⁵ +4.1° (c 1.0, MeOH).

Example 76

(-)-cis-N-Ethyl-4-[[2-methoxy-5-[5-(trifluoromethyl)-1H-tetrazol-1-yl]benzyl]amino]-3-phenyl-1-piperidinecarboxamide hydrochloride

[0429] The compound (0.80 g) obtained in Example 74 was treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 75 to obtain the title compound (0.25 g) as white powder.

[α]_D²⁵ -3.9° (c 1.0, MeOH).

Example 77

cis-1-(Methoxyacetyl)-N-[2-methoxy-5-[5-(trifluoromethyl)-1H-tetrazol-1-yl]benzyl]-3-phenyl-4-piperidineamine hydrochloride

[0430] The compound (0.30 g) obtained in Process 2 of Example 71, methoxyacetic acid (0.048 g), WSC · HCl (0.17 g), HOBt·H₂O (0.14 g), Et₃N (0.17 ml) and DMF (5.0 ml) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 69 to obtain colorless amorphous.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃): δ 1.60-1.80 (1H, m), 1.90-2.05 (1H, m), 2.94-3.06 (2H, m), 3.20-3.90 (11H, m), 4.00-4.60 (3H, m), 6.84 (1H, dd, J=8.7, 5.7 Hz), 7.01 (1H, d, J=2.4 Hz), 7.04-7.14 (2H, m), 7.15-7.30 (4H, m).

[0431] The obtained product was treated with 4 N hydrochloric acid/ethyl acetate (0.15 ml), and recrystallized from ethyl acetate - IPE to obtain the title compound (0.28 g) as white powder.

Melting point: 126 - 128°C.

Example 78

(+)-cis-1-(Methoxyacetyl)-N-[2-methoxy-5-[5-(trifluoromethyl)-1H-tetrazol-1-yl]benzyl]-3-phenyl-4-piperidineamine hydrochloride

[0432] The compound (0.43 g) obtained in Example 77 was optically resolved with chiral HPLC, and the fractions were concentrated under reduced pressure. The obtained residue was treated with 4 N hydrochloric acid/ethyl acetate (0.10 ml), and recrystallized from ethyl acetate - IPE to obtain the title compound (0.22 g) as white powder.

Chiral HPLC condition

[0433]

Column: CHIRALPAK AD 50 mm ID × 500 mm L

Solvent: hexane/ethanol = 1/1

Flow rate: 60 ml/min

Temperature: 35°C

Detection method: UV 220 nm

$[\alpha]_D^{25} +6.1^\circ$ (c 1.0, MeOH).

Example 79

(-)-cis-1-(Methoxyacetyl)-N-[2-methoxy-5-[5-(trifluoromethyl)-1H-tetrazol-1-yl]benzyl]-3-phenyl-4-piperidineamine hydrochloride

[0434] The compound (0.43 g) obtained in Example 77 was treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 78 to obtain the title compound (0.21 g) as white powder.

$[\alpha]_D^{25} -6.3^\circ$ (c 1.0, MeOH).

Example 80

cis-1-[(1-Acetyl-4-piperidiny)carbonyl]-N-[2-methoxy-5-[5-(trifluoromethyl)-1H-tetrazol-1-yl]benzyl]-3-phenyl-4-piperidineamine hydrochloride

[0435] The compound (0.30 g) obtained in Process 2 of Example 71, 1-acetylpiperidine-4-carboxylic acid (0.092 g), WSC-HCl (0.17 g), HOBt-H₂O (0.14 g), Et₃N (0.17 ml) and DMF (5.0 ml) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 69 to obtain colorless amorphous.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃): δ 1.50 - 2.00 (4H, m), 2.05-2.15 (3H, m), 2.50-4.00 (16H, m), 4.20-4.68 (2H, m), 6.80-6.87 (1H, m), 6.97-7.08 (2H, m), 7.10-7.32 (5H, m).

[0436] The obtained product was treated with 4 N hydrochloric acid/ethyl acetate (0.14 ml), and recrystallized from ethyl acetate - IPE to obtain the title compound (0.29 g) as white powder.

Melting point: 150 - 152°C.

Example 81

(-)-cis-1-[(1-Acetyl-4-piperidiny)carbonyl]-N-[2-methoxy-5-[5-(trifluoromethyl)-1H-tetrazol-1-yl]benzyl]-3-phenyl-4-piperidineamine hydrochloride

[0437] The compound (0.54 g) obtained in Example 80 was optically resolved with chiral HPLC, and the fractions were concentrated under reduced pressure to obtain colorless amorphous.

Chiral HPLC condition

[0438]

Column: CHIRALPAK AD 50 mm ID × 500 mm L

Solvent: hexane/ethanol = 50/50 (0 minute) → 0/100 (100 minutes)

Flow rate: 80 ml/min
 Temperature: 30°C
 Detection method: UV 220 nm

$[\alpha]_D^{25} +55.8^\circ$ (c 1.0, MeOH).

Melting point: 129 - 131°C.

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3): δ 1.50-2.00 (4H, m), 2.05 - 2.15 (3H, m), 2.50-4.00 (16H, m), 4.20-4.68 (2H, m), 6.80-6.87 (1H, m), 6.97-7.08 (2H, m), 7.10-7.32 (5H, m).

[0439] The obtained product was treated with 4 N hydrochloric acid/ethyl acetate (0.11 ml), and recrystallized from ethyl acetate - IPE to obtain the title compound (0.25 g) as white powder.

$[\alpha]_D^{25} -9.2^\circ$ (c 1.0, MeOH).

Example 82

(+)-cis-1-[(1-Acetyl-4-piperidiny)carbonyl]-N-[2-methoxy-5-[5-(trifluoromethyl)-1H-tetrazol-1-yl]benzyl]-3-phenyl-4-piperidineamine hydrochloride

[0440] The compound (0.54 g) obtained in Example 80 was treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 81 to obtain the title compound (0.26 g) as white powder.

$[\alpha]_D^{25} +8.6^\circ$ (c 1.0, MeOH).

Example 83

cis-N-Ethyl-3-phenyl-4-[[[5-[5-(trifluoromethyl)-1H-tetrazol-1-yl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzofuran-7-yl]methyl]amino]-1-piperidinecarboxamide

(Process 1)

[0441] The compound (1.25 g) obtained in Process 2 of Reference Example 2, the compound (1.35 g) obtained in Process 3 of Reference Example 7, $\text{NaBH}(\text{OAc})_3$ (3.1 g), acetic acid (0.050 ml) and dichloromethane (20 ml) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Process 3 of Reference Example 2 to obtain cis-3-phenyl-4-[[[5-[5-(trifluoromethyl)-1H-tetrazol-1-yl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzofuran-7-yl]methyl]amino]-1-piperidinecarboxylic acid tert-butyl ester (1.95 g) as colorless amorphous.

(Process 2)

[0442] The compound (1.95 g) obtained in Process 1 was reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Process 3 of Example 70 to obtain cis-3-phenyl-N-[[[5-[5-(trifluoromethyl)-1H-tetrazol-1-yl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzofuran-7-yl]methyl]-4-piperidineamine hydrochloride (2.00 g) as white powder.

(Process 3)

[0443] The compound (0.50 g) obtained in Process 2, ethyl isocyanate (0.076 ml), Et_3N (0.27 ml) and acetonitrile (10 ml) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 6 to obtain colorless amorphous. The obtained product was recrystallized from ethyl acetate - IPE to obtain the title compound (0.42 g) as white powder.

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3): δ 1.12 (3H, t, $J=7.2$ Hz), 1.65-1.80 (1H, m), 1.84-1.94 (1H, m), 2.95-3.06 (2H, m), 3.18-3.33 (4H, m), 3.36-3.46 (1H, m), 3.55 (1H, d, $J=14.7$ Hz), 3.60-3.70 (2H, m), 3.75 (1H, d, $J=14.7$ Hz), 3.75-3.82 (1H, m), 4.38-4.60 (3H, m), 6.79 (1H, s like), 7.09 (1H, s like), 7.12-7.20 (3H, m), 7.22-7.25 (2H, m).

Melting point: 157 - 159°C.

Example 84

(-)-cis-N-Ethyl-3-phenyl-4-[[[5-[5-(trifluoromethyl)-1H-tetrazol-1-yl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzofuran-7-yl]methyl]amino]-1-piperidinecarboxamide hydrochloride

[0444] The compound (0.42 g) obtained in Example 83 was optically resolved with chiral HPLC, and the fractions were concentrated under reduced pressure. The obtained residue was treated with 4 N hydrochloric acid/ethyl acetate

(0.090 ml), and recrystallized from ethyl acetate - IPE to obtain the title compound (0.17 g) as white powder.

Chiral HPLC condition

[0445]

Column: CHIRALPAK AD 50 mm ID × 500 mm L

Solvent: hexane/ethanol = 85/15

Flow rate: 60 ml/min

Temperature: 30°C

Detection method: UV 254 nm

$[\alpha]_D^{25} -11.8^\circ$ (c 1.0, MeOH).

Example 85

(+)-cis-N-Ethyl-3-phenyl-4-[[[5-[5-(trifluoromethyl)-1H-tetrazol-1-yl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzofuran-7-yl]methyl]amino]-1-piperidinecarboxamide hydrochloride

[0446] The compound (0.54 g) obtained in Example 83 was treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 84 to obtain the title compound (0.19 g) as white powder.

$[\alpha]_D^{25} +10.4^\circ$ (c 1.0, MeOH).

Example 86

cis-1-[(1-Acetyl-4-piperidinyl)carbonyl]-3-phenyl-N-[[5-[5-(trifluoromethyl)-1H-tetrazol-1-yl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzofuran-7-yl]methyl]-4-piperidineamine hydrochloride

[0447] The compound (0.30 g) obtained in Process 2 of Example 83, 1-acetylpiperidine-4-carboxylic acid (0.080 g), WSC-HCl (0.17 g), HOBt-H₂O (0.16 g), Et₃N (0.16 ml) and DMF (5.0 ml) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 69 to obtain colorless amorphous.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) : δ 1.40-2.10 (9H, m), 2.50-4.00 (12H, m), 4.20-4.65 (5H, m), 6.74-6.82 (1H, m), 7.04-7.32 (6H, m).

[0448] The obtained product was treated with 4 N hydrochloric acid/ethyl acetate (0.12 ml), and recrystallized from ethyl acetate - IPE to obtain the title compound (0.21 g) as white powder.

Melting point: 152 - 154°C.

Example 87

(+)-cis-1-[(1-Acetyl-4-piperidinyl)carbonyl]-3-phenyl-N-[[5-[5-(trifluoromethyl)-1H-tetrazol-1-yl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzofuran-7-yl]methyl]-4-piperidineamine hydrochloride

[0449] The compound (0.40 g) obtained in Example 86 was optically resolved with chiral HPLC, and the fractions were concentrated under reduced pressure. The obtained residue was treated with 4 N hydrochloric acid/ethyl acetate (0.074 ml), and recrystallized from ethyl acetate - IPE to obtain the title compound (0.18 g) as white powder.

Chiral HPLC condition

[0450]

Column: CHIRALPAK OD 50 mm ID × 500 mm L

Solvent: hexane/ethanol = 70/30

Flow rate: 60 ml/min

Temperature: 30°C

Detection method: UV 254 nm

$[\alpha]_D^{25} +14.9^\circ$ (c 1.0, MeOH).

Example 88

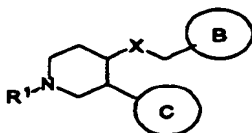
(-)-cis-1-[(1-Acetyl-4-piperidiny)carbonyl]-3-phenyl-N-[[5-[5-(trifluoromethyl)-1H-tetrazol-1-yl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzofuran-7-yl]methyl]-4-piperidineamine hydrochloride

[0451] The compound (0.40 g) obtained in Example 86 was treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 87 to obtain the title compound (0.18 g) as white powder.

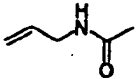
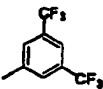

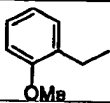
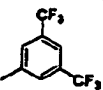

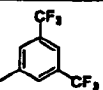

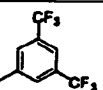

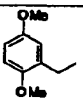
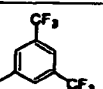

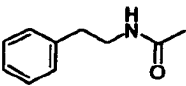
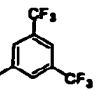

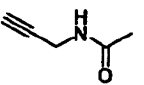
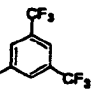

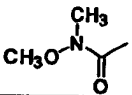
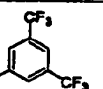





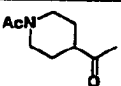
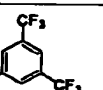

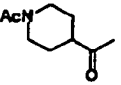
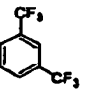

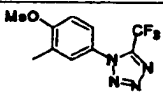

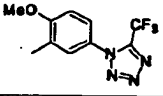

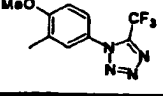

$[\alpha]_D^{25} -16.9^\circ$ (c 1.0, MeOH).

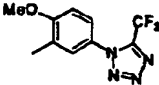

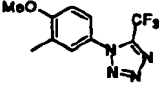

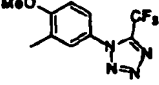

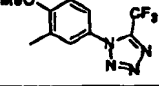

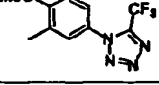

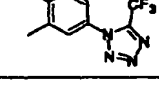

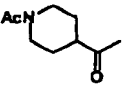
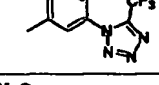

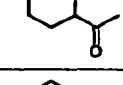
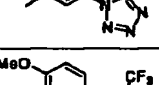

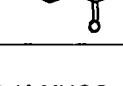
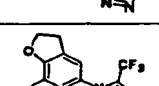

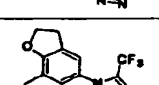

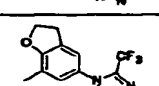

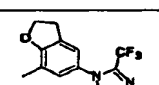

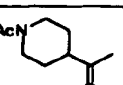
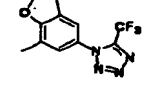

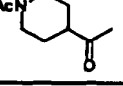
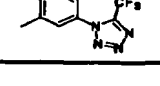




[0452] The chemical structural formulae of the compounds obtained in the above-mentioned Examples are as follows.

{Table 7}

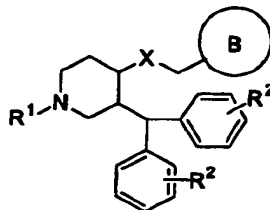


Ex. No.	R¹	X	B	C
1	H	O		
2	CH₃CO	O		
3	PhCO	O		
4	CH₃SO₂	O		
5	CH₃OCO	O		
6	CH₃NHCO	O		
7		O		
8	C₂H₅OCOCH₂	O		
9	H₂NCOCH₂	O		
10	NCCH₂	O		
11	(CH₃)₂NCO	O		
12	PhNHCO	O		
13	C₂H₅NHCO	O		
14		O		

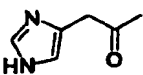
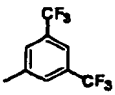
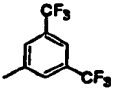
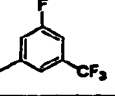
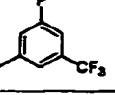
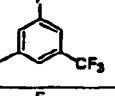
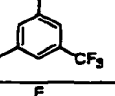
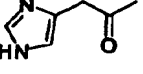
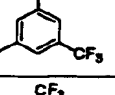
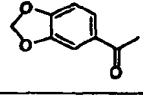
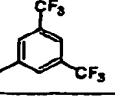
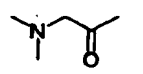
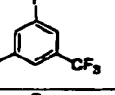
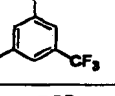
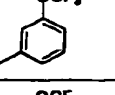
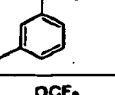
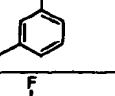
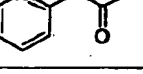
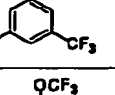
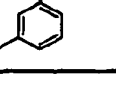
15		O		
16		O		
17	H ₂ NCO	O		
18	ⁿ PrNHCO	O		
19		O		
20		O		
21		O		
22		O		
23 (cis)	H	NH		
24 (trans)	H	NH		
69		O		
70		O		
71	CH ₃ NHCO	NH		
72	CH ₃ NHCO	NH		
73	CH ₃ NHCO	NH		

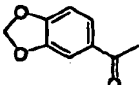
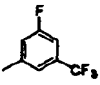
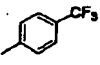
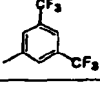

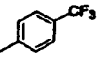
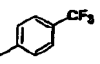
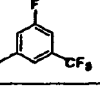
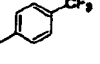
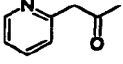
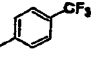
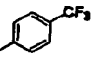

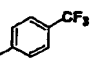
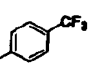
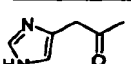
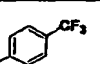
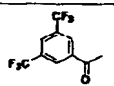
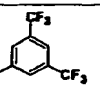
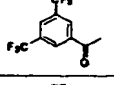
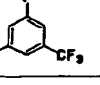
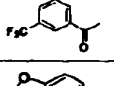
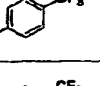
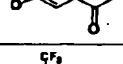
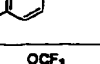
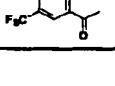

5	74	C_2H_5NHCO	NH		
10	75	C_2H_5NHCO	NH		
15	76	C_2H_5NHCO	NH		
20	77	CH_3OCH_2CO	NH		
25	78	CH_3OCH_2CO	NH		
30	79	CH_3OCH_2CO	NH		
35	80		NH		
40	81		NH		
45	82		NH		
50	83	C_2H_5NHCO	NH		
55	84	C_2H_5NHCO	NH		
	85	C_2H_5NHCO	NH		
	86		NH		
	87		NH		
	88		NH		

[Table 8]



Ex. No.	R ¹	X	B	R ²
25	H	O		H
26	H	O		H
27	H	O		H
28	H	O		H
29		O		H
30	CH ₃ SO ₂	O		H
31	CH ₃ NHCO	O		H
32		O		H
33	CH ₃ CO	O		H
34	CH ₃ OCH ₂ CO	O		H
35	CH ₃ SO ₂	O		H
36		O		H

37		O		H
38	C_2H_5CO	O		H
39	CH_3NHCO	O		H
40	C_2H_5CO	O		H
41	CH_3CO	O		H
42	CH_3OCH_2CO	O		H
43		O		H
44		O		H
45		O		H
46	H_2NCH_2CO	O		H
47	CH_3OCH_2CO	O		H
48	CH_3CO	O		H
49	C_2H_5CO	O		H
50		O		H
51	H_2NCH_2CO	O		H

52		O		H
53	CH_3SO_2	O		H
54	PhCH_2	O		H
55		O		H
56	CH_3CO	O		H
57	PhCH_2	O		H
58	CH_3NHCO	O		H
59		O		H
60	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{CO}$	O		H
61		O		H
62	$\text{CH}_3\text{OCH}_2\text{CO}$	O		H
63		O		H
64		O		H
65		O		H
66		O		H
67		O		H
68		O		H

Example 89

cis-3-Benzhydryl-4-[[3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-1-[3-(1-piperidinyl)propanoyl]piperidine trifluoroacetate

5 **[0453]** The compound (28.7 mg) obtained in Example 25 and 1-piperidinepropionic acid (18.9 mg) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 33 to obtain the title compound.

Yield: 36.1 mg

HPLC analysis (Condition B): Purity 97% (Retention time: 1.90 minutes)

MS (ESI+); 633 (M+H)

10 **[0454]** The compounds of the following Examples were synthesized from the compounds obtained in Examples 25, 152, 217, 245, 271, 295 and 320 as starting materials by reacting and treating in the same manner as in the method described in Example 89 using the respective corresponding carboxylic acid derivatives.

15

20

25

30

35

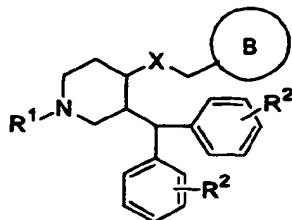
40

45

50

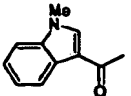
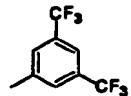
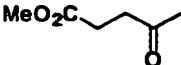
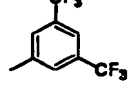

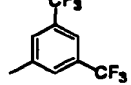
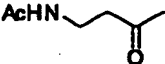
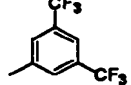
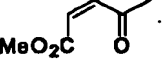
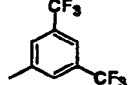
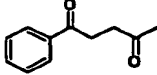
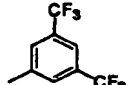
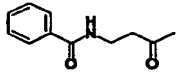
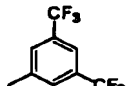
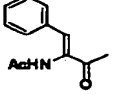
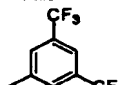
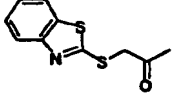
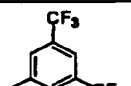
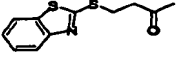
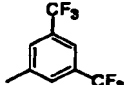
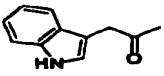
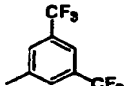
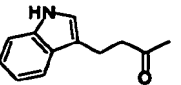
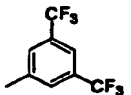
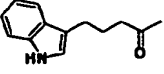
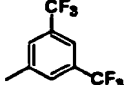
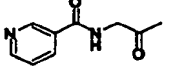
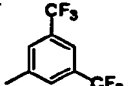
55

[Table 9]

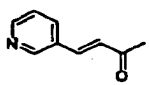
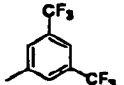
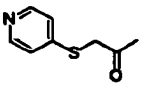
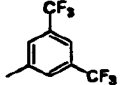
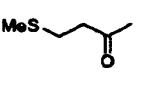
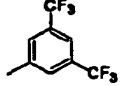

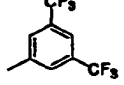
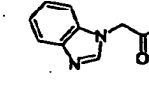
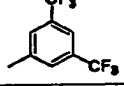
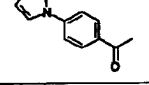
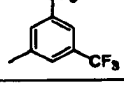
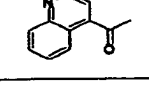
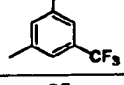
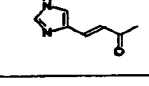
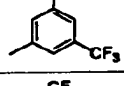
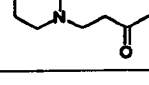
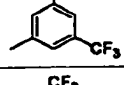
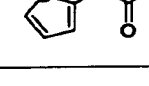
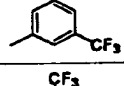
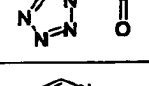
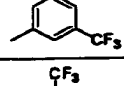
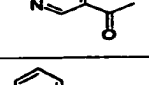
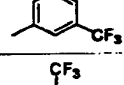
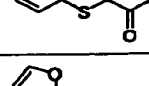
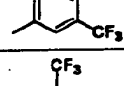
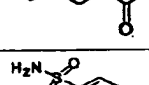
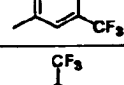
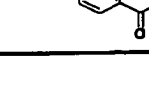
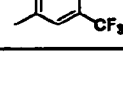


Ex. No.	Stereochemistry	R ¹	X	B	R ²	MS (ESI) (M+H) ⁺
89	(±)-cis		O		H	633
90	(±)-cis		O		H	618
91	(±)-cis		O		H	604
92	(±)-cis		O		H	600
93	(±)-cis		O		H	644
94	(±)-cis		O		H	614
95	(±)-cis		O		H	677
96	(±)-cis		O		H	604
97	(±)-cis		O		H	621

5

98	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		H	651
99	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		H	608
100	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		H	593
101	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		H	621
102	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		H	608
103	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		H	654
104	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		H	669
105	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		H	681
106	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		H	701
107	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		H	715
108	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		H	651
109	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		H	665
110	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		H	679
111	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		H	656

55

5	112	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		H	625
	113	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		H	645
10	114	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		H	596
15	115	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		H	630
20	116	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		H	652
	117	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		H	665
25	118	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		H	649
30	119	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		H	614
35	153	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		4-F	669
	154	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		4-F	654
40	155	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		4-F	640
45	156	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		4-F	636
50	157	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		4-F	680
	158	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		4-F	650
55	159	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		4-F	713

5

10

15

20

25

30

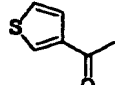
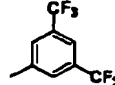
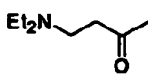
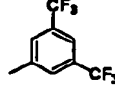
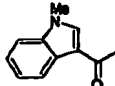
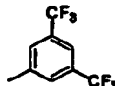
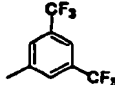
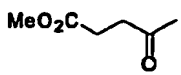
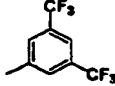
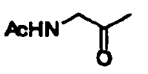
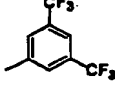
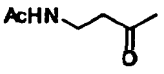
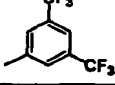
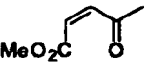
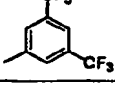
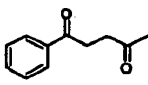
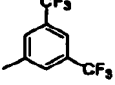
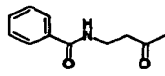
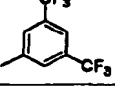
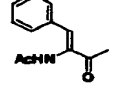
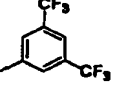
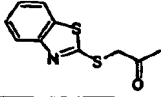
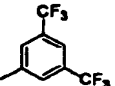
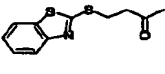
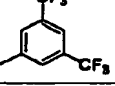
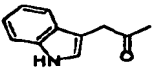
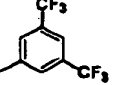
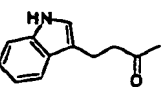
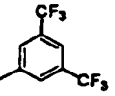
35

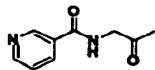
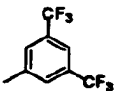
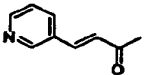
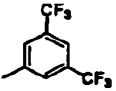
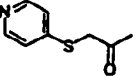
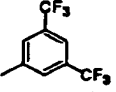
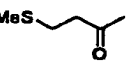
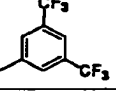
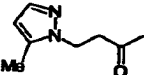
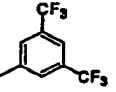
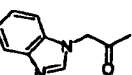
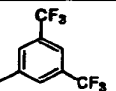
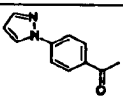
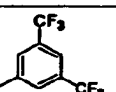
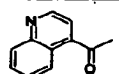
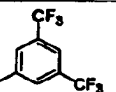
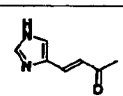
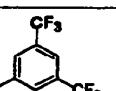
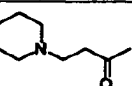
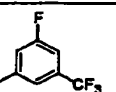
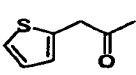
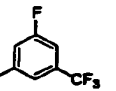
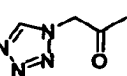
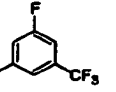
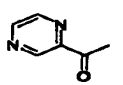
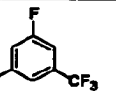
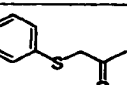
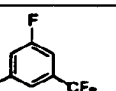
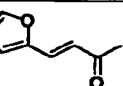
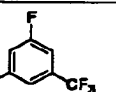
40

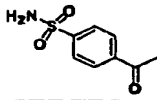
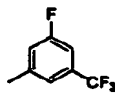
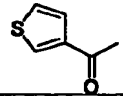
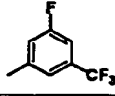
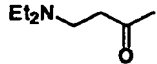
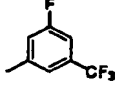
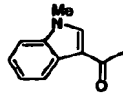
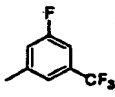
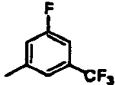
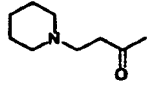

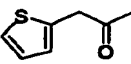

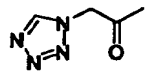

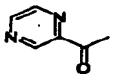

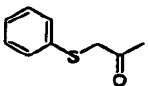

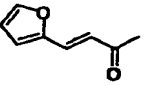

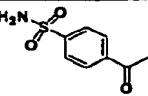

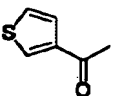

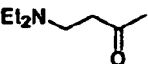

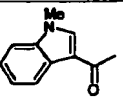

45

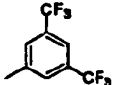
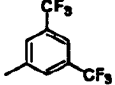
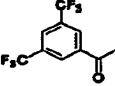
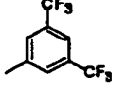
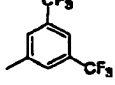
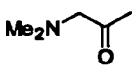
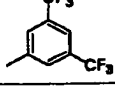

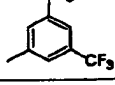
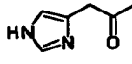
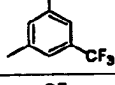
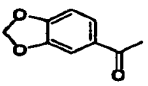
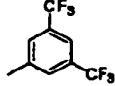
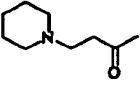
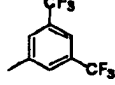
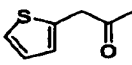
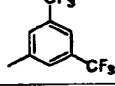
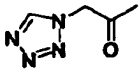
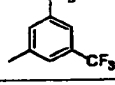
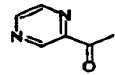
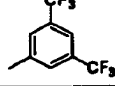
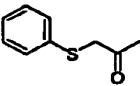
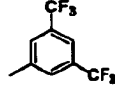
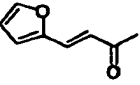
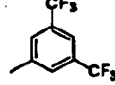
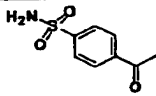
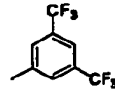
50


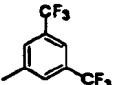
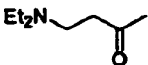
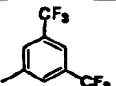
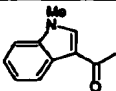
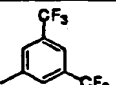
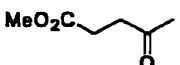
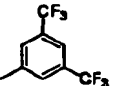
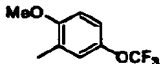
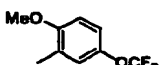
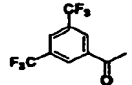
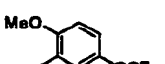
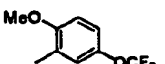
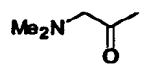
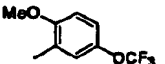
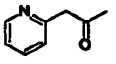
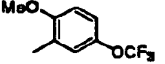
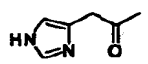
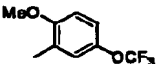
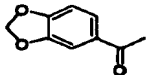
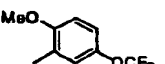
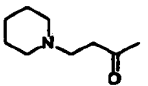
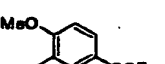
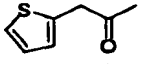
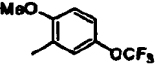
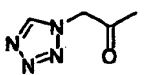
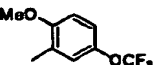
55


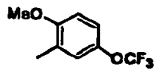
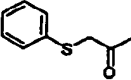
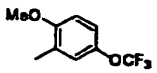
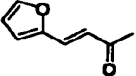
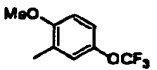
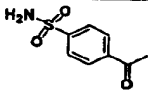
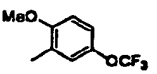
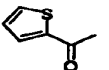
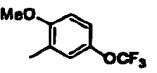
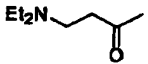
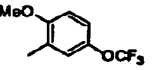
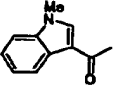
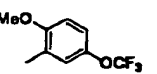
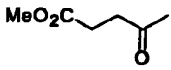
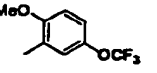
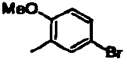
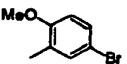
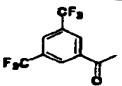
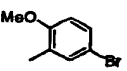
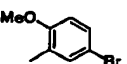
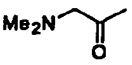
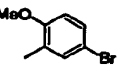
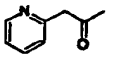
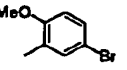
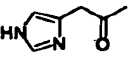
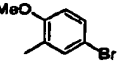
160	(±)-cis		O		4-F	640
161	(±)-cis		O		4-F	657
162	(±)-cis		O		4-F	687
163	(±)-cis	NCCH ₂ CO	O		4-F	597
164	(±)-cis		O		4-F	644
165	(±)-cis		O		4-F	629
166	(±)-cis		O		4-F	657
167	(±)-cis		O		4-F	642
168	(±)-cis		O		4-F	690
169	(±)-cis		O		4-F	705
170	(±)-cis		O		4-F	717
171	(±)-cis		O		4-F	737
172	(±)-cis		O		4-F	751
173	(±)-cis		O		4-F	687
174	(±)-cis		O		4-F	701

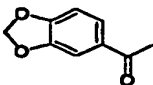
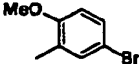
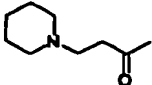
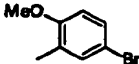
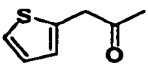
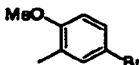
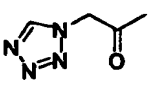
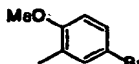
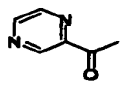
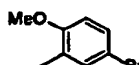
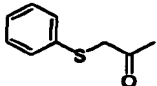
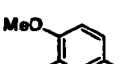
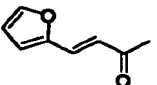
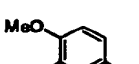
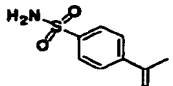
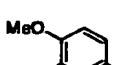
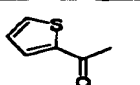
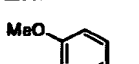
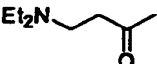
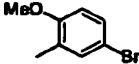
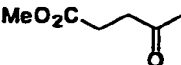
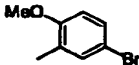
5	175	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		4-F	692
	176	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		4-F	661
10	177	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		4-F	681
15	178	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		4-F	632
	179	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		4-F	666
20	180	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		4-F	688
25	181	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		4-F	701
30	182	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		4-F	685
	183	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		4-F	650
35	218	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		4-F	619
40	219	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		4-F	604
45	220	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		4-F	590
	221	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		4-F	586
50	222	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		4-F	630
55	223	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		4-F	600

5	224	(±)-cis		O		4-F	663
	225	(±)-cis		O		4-F	590
10	226	(±)-cis		O		4-F	607
15	227	(±)-cis		O		4-F	637
20	228	(±)-cis	NCCH ₂ CO	O		4-F	547
25	246	(±)-cis		NH		H	526
	247	(±)-cis		NH		H	511
30	248	(±)-cis		NH		H	497
35	249	(±)-cis		NH		H	493
40	250	(±)-cis		NH		H	537
	251	(±)-cis		NH		H	507
45	252	(±)-cis		NH		H	570
	253	(±)-cis		NH		H	497
50	254	(±)-cis		NH		H	514
55	255	(±)-cis		NH		H	544

5	272	(±)- <i>cis</i>	Ac	NH		H	535
	273	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtCO	NH		H	549
10	274	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		H	733
15	275	(±)- <i>cis</i>	CH ₃ OCH ₂ CO	NH		H	565
	276	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		H	578
20	277	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		H	612
25	278	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		H	601
30	279	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		H	641
	280	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		H	632
35	281	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		H	617
40	282	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		H	603
45	283	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		H	599
	284	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		H	643
50	285	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		H	613
55	286	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		H	676

287	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		H	603
288	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		H	620
289	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		H	650
290	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		H	607
296	(±)- <i>cis</i>	Ac	NH		H	513
297	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtCO	NH		H	527
298	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		H	711
299	(±)- <i>cis</i>	CH ₃ OCH ₂ CO	NH		H	543
300	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		H	556
301	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		H	590
302	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		H	579
303	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		H	619
304	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		H	610
305	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		H	595
306	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		H	581

5	307	(±)-cis		NH		H	577
10	308	(±)-cis		NH		H	621
15	309	(±)-cis		NH		H	591
20	310	(±)-cis		NH		H	654
25	311	(±)-cis		NH		H	581
30	312	(±)-cis		NH		H	598
35	313	(±)-cis		NH		H	628
40	314	(±)-cis		NH		H	585
45	321	(±)-cis	Ac	NH		H	507, 509
50	322	(±)-cis	EtCO	NH		H	521, 523
55	323	(±)-cis		NH		H	705, 707
	324	(±)-cis	CH ₃ OCH ₂ CO	NH		H	537, 539
	325	(±)-cis		NH		H	550, 552
	326	(±)-cis		NH		H	584, 586
	327	(±)-cis		NH		H	573, 575

328	(±)-cis		NH		H	613, 615
329	(±)-cis		NH		H	604, 606
330	(±)-cis		NH		H	589, 591
331	(±)-cis		NH		H	575, 577
332	(±)-cis		NH		H	571, 573
333	(±)-cis		NH		H	615, 617
334	(±)-cis		NH		H	585, 587
335	(±)-cis		NH		H	648, 650
336	(±)-cis		NH		H	575, 577
337	(±)-cis		NH		H	592, 594
338	(±)-cis		NH		H	579, 581

Example 120

2-[cis-3-Benzhydryl-4-[[3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-1-piperidiny]-2-oxoethylamine trifluoroacetate

[0455] The compound (28.7 mg) obtained in Example 25 and Boc-glycine (21.0 mg) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 29 to obtain the title compound.

Yield: 26.8 mg

HPLC analysis (Condition B): Purity 99% (Retention time: 1.82 minutes)

MS (ESI+): 551 (M+H)

[0456] The compounds of the following Examples were synthesized from the compounds obtained in Examples 25, 152, 217, 245, 271, 295 and 320 as starting materials by reacting and treating in the same manner as in the method described in Example 120 using the respective corresponding amino acids protected with Boc group.

[Table 10]

5

10

15

20

25

30

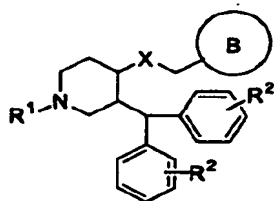
35

40

45

50

55



Ex. No.	Stereochemistry	R ¹	X	B	R ²	MS (ESI) (M+H) ⁺
120	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		H	551
121	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		H	579
184	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		4-F	587
185	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		4-F	615
229	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		4-F	537
230	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		4-F	585
256	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		H	444
257	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		H	472
291	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		H	550
292	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		H	578
315	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		H	528
316	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		H	558
339	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		H	522, 524
340	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		H	550, 552

Example 122

cis-3-Benzhydryl-1-(benzylsulfonyl)-4-[[3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]piperidine

- 5 **[0457]** The compound (28.7 mg) obtained in Example 25 and α -toluenesulfonyl chloride (17.2 mg) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 30 to obtain the title compound.

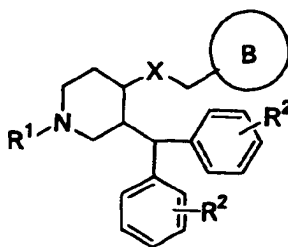
Yield: 19.0 mg

HPLC analysis (Condition B): Purity 98% (Retention time: 2.44 minutes)

MS (ESI⁺): 648 (M+H)

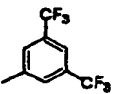
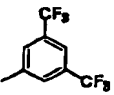
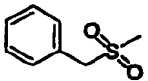
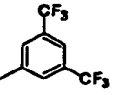
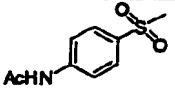
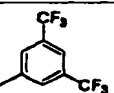
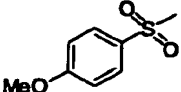
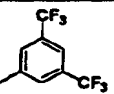
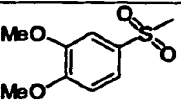
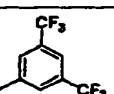
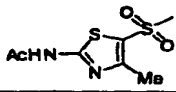
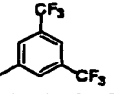
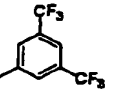
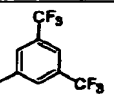
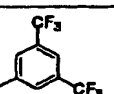
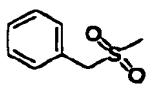
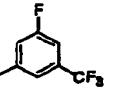
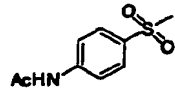
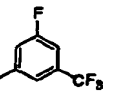
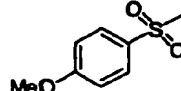
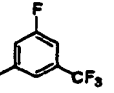
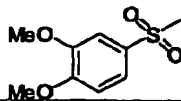
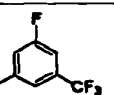
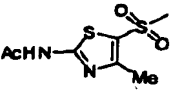
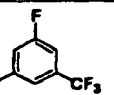
- 10 **[0458]** The compounds of the following Examples were synthesized from the compounds obtained in Examples 25, 152, 217 and 245 as starting materials by reacting and treating in the same manner as in the method described in Example 122 using the respective corresponding sulfonyl chloride derivatives.

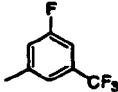
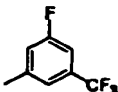
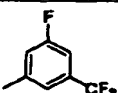
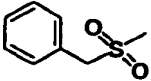
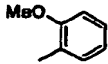
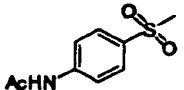
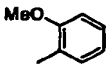
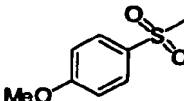
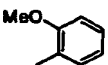
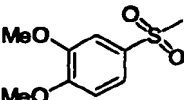
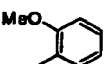
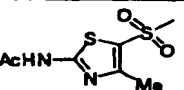
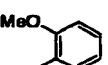
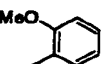
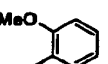
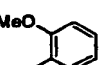
15 [Table 11]



Ex. No.	Stereo-chemistry	R ¹	X	B	R ²	MS (ESI) (M+H) ⁺
122	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		H	648
123	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		H	691
124	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		H	664
125	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		H	694
126	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		H	712

50

5	127	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtSO ₂	O		H	586
	128	(±)- <i>cis</i>	PhSO ₂	O		H	634
10	186	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		4-F	684
15	187	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		4-F	727
	188	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		4-F	700
20	189	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		4-F	730
25	190	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		4-F	748
30	191	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtSO ₂	O		4-F	622
	192	(±)- <i>cis</i>	PhSO ₂	O		4-F	670
35	193	(±)- <i>cis</i>	MeSO ₂	O		4-F	608
40	231	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		4-F	634
45	232	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		4-F	677
	233	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		4-F	650
50	234	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		4-F	680
55	235	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		4-F	698

236	(±)-cis	EtSO ₂	O		4-F	572
237	(±)-cis	PhSO ₂	O		4-F	620
238	(±)-cis	MeSO ₂	O		4-F	558
258	(±)-cis		NH		H	541
259	(±)-cis		NH		H	584
260	(±)-cis		NH		H	557
261	(±)-cis		NH		H	587
262	(±)-cis		NH		H	605
263	(±)-cis	EtSO ₂	NH		H	479
264	(±)-cis	PhSO ₂	NH		H	527
265	(±)-cis	MeSO ₂	NH		H	465

Example 129

Ethyl [[[cis-3-benzhydryl-4-[[3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-1-piperidinyl]carbonyl]amino]acetate

[0459] The compound (28.7 mg) obtained in Example 25 and ethyl isocynoacetate (11.6 mg) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 31 to obtain the title compound.

Yield: 30.1 mg

HPLC analysis (Condition B): Purity 95% (Retention time: 2.27 minutes)

MS (ESI+): 623 (M+H)

[0460] The compounds of the following Examples were synthesized from the compounds obtained in Examples 25, 152, 217, 245, 271, 295 and 320 as starting materials by reacting and treating in the same manner as in the method described in Example 129 using the respective corresponding isocyanate derivatives.

[Table 12]

5

10

15

20

25

30

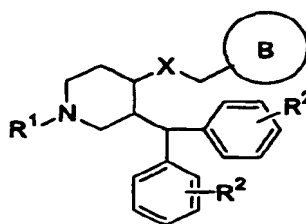
35

40

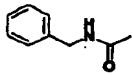
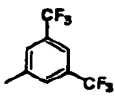
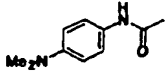
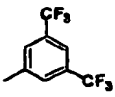
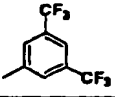
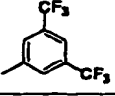
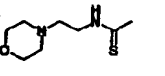
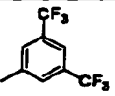
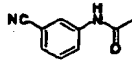
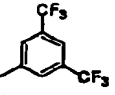
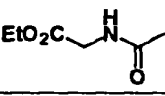
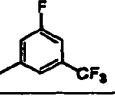
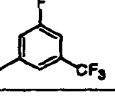
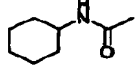
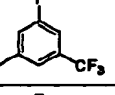
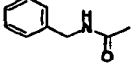
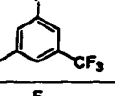
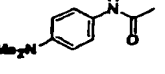
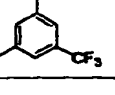
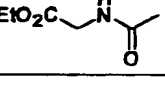
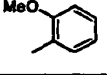
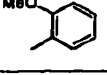
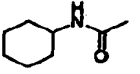
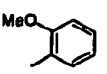
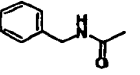
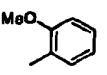
45

50

55



Ex. No.	Stereochemistry	R ¹	X	B	R ²	MS (ESI) (M+H) ⁺
129	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		H	623
130	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	O		H	565
131	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		H	619
132	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		H	627
133	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		H	656
134	(±)- <i>cis</i>	<i>n</i> PrNHCO	O		H	579
135	(±)- <i>cis</i>	<i>n</i> BuNHCO	O		H	593
136	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		H	666
137	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		H	638
194	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		4-F	659
195	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	O		4-F	601
196	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		4-F	655

5	197	(±)-cis		O		4-F	663
	198	(±)-cis		O		4-F	692
10	199	(±)-cis	<i>n</i> PrNHCO	O		4-F	615
	200	(±)-cis	<i>n</i> BuNHCO	O		4-F	629
15	201	(±)-cis		O		4-F	702
20	202	(±)-cis		O		4-F	674
25	239	(±)-cis		O		4-F	609
	240	(±)-cis	EtNHCO	O		4-F	551
30	241	(±)-cis		O		4-F	605
35	242	(±)-cis		O		4-F	613
40	243	(±)-cis		O		4-F	642
45	266	(±)-cis		NH		H	516
	267	(±)-cis	EtNHCO	NH		H	458
50	268	(±)-cis		NH		H	512
55	269	(±)-cis		NH		H	520

270	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		H	549
293	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		H	622
294	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	NH		H	564
317	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		H	600
318	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	NH		H	542
341	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		H	594, 596
342	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	NH		H	536, 538

Example 138

cis-3-Benzhydryl-4-[[3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-1-propylpiperidine trifluoroacetate

[0461] To a mixed solution of the compound (28.7 mg) obtained in Example 25 and propionaldehyde (5.2 mg) in dichloromethane (2 ml), NaBH(OAc)₃ (20.0 mg) was added, and the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 14 hours. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and then the residue was poured into a mixed solution of ethyl acetate and water. The organic layer was washed with saturated brine, and dried, and the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and then the residue was purified by preparative HPLC to obtain the title compound.

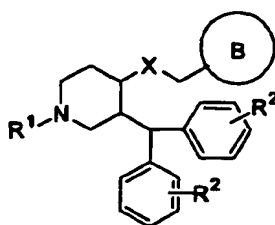
Yield: 22.9 mg

HPLC analysis (Condition B): Purity 99% (Retention time: 1.89 minutes)

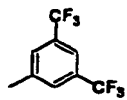
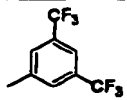

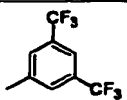
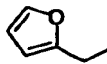
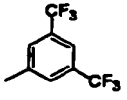
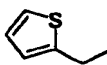
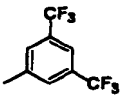
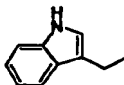
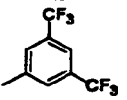
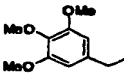
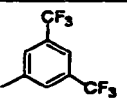
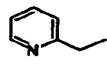
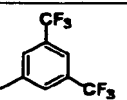
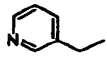
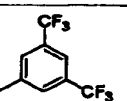
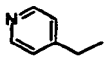
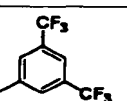

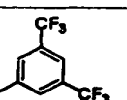

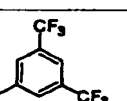
MS (ESI⁺): 536 (M+H)

[0462] The compounds of the following Examples were synthesized from the compounds obtained in Examples 25 and 152 as starting materials by reacting and treating in the same manner as in the method described in Example 138 using the respective corresponding aldehyde derivatives.

[Table 13]



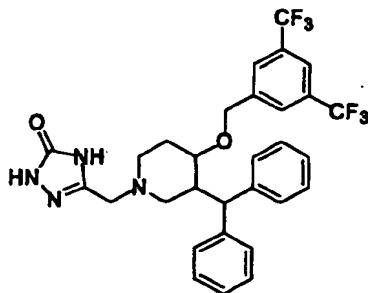
Ex. No.	Stereo-chemistry	R¹	X	B	R²	MS (ESI) (M+H)⁺
138	(±)-cis	<i>n</i> Pr	O		H	536
139	(±)-cis	(CH₃)₂CHCH₂	O		H	550
140	(±)-cis	MeS-CH₂CH₂CH₂	O		H	582
141	(±)-cis		O		H	574
142	(±)-cis		O		H	590
143	(±)-cis		O		H	623
144	(±)-cis		O		H	674
145	(±)-cis		O		H	585
146	(±)-cis		O		H	585
147	(±)-cis		O		H	585
148	(±)-cis		O		H	574
149	(±)-cis		O		H	574

203	(±)- <i>cis</i>	n Pr	O		4-F	572
204	(±)- <i>cis</i>	$(CH_3)_2CHCH_2$	O		4-F	586
205	(±)- <i>cis</i>	MeS 	O		4-F	618
206	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		4-F	610
207	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		4-F	626
208	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		4-F	659
209	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		4-F	710
210	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		4-F	621
211	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		4-F	621
212	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		4-F	621
213	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		4-F	610
214	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		4-F	610

Example 150

5-[[cis-3-Benzhydryl-4-[[3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-1-piperidinyl]methyl]-1,2-dihydro-3H-1,2,4-triazol-3-one trifluoroacetate

[0463]



[0464] The compound (28.7 mg) obtained in Example 25 and 5-(chloromethyl)-2,4-dihydro-3H-1,2,4-triazol-3-one (12.0 mg) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 7 to obtain the title compound.

Yield: 26.9 mg

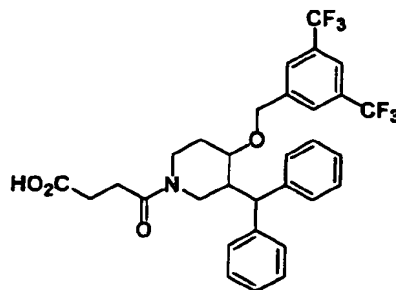
HPLC analysis (Condition B): Purity 98% (Retention time: 1.76 minutes)

MS (ESI+): 591 (M+H)

Example 151

4-[cis-3-Benzhydryl-4-[[3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-1-piperidinyl]-4-oxobutanoic acid

[0465]



[0466] To a solution of the compound (36.4 mg) obtained in Example 99 in methanol (2.0 ml), a solution of an aqueous 1 N NaOH solution (0.9 ml) was added, and the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 14 hours. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and then the residue was poured into ethyl acetate and a diluted aqueous hydrochloric acid solution. The organic layer was washed with saturated brine, and dried, and the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and then the residue was purified by preparative HPLC to obtain the title compound.

Yield: 23.3 mg

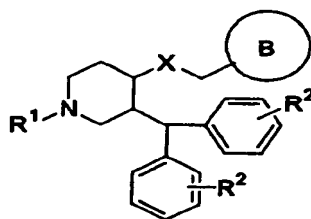
HPLC analysis (Condition B): Purity 90% (Retention time: 2.27 minutes)

MS (ESI+): 594 (M+H)

[0467] The compounds of the following Examples were synthesized from the compound obtained in Process 4 of Reference Example 3 or a known 3-benzhydryl-4-oxopiperidine-1-carboxylic acid tert-butyl ester derivatives as a starting material by reacting and treating in the same manner as in the method described in Process 5 of Reference Example

3 and Example 25 using the respective corresponding benzyl halide derivatives.

[Table 14]

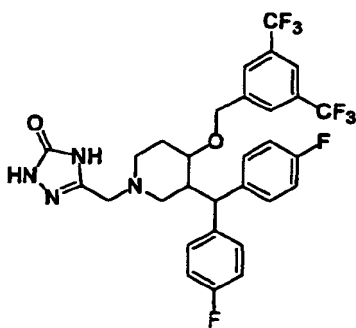


Ex. No.	Stereo-chemistry	R ¹	X	B	R ²	MS (ESI) (M+H) ⁺
152	(±)- <i>cis</i>	H	O		4-F	530
217	(±)- <i>cis</i>	H	O		4-F	480
244	(±)- <i>cis</i>	H	O		4-F	478

Example 215

5-[[cis-3-[Bis(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-4-[[3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-1-piperidinyl]methyl]-1,2-dihydro-3H-1,2,4-triazol-3-one trifluoroacetate

[0468]



[0469] The compound (31.7 mg) obtained in Example 152 and 5-(chloromethyl)-2,4-dihydro-3H-1,2,4-triazol-3-one (12.0 mg) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 7 to obtain the title compound.

Yield: 19.6 mg

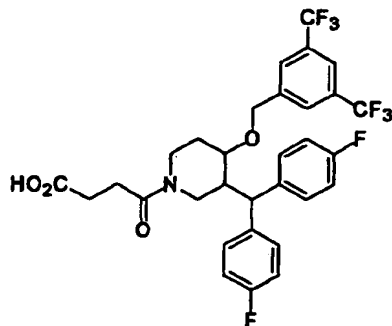
HPLC analysis (Condition B): Purity 93% (Retention time: 1.76 minutes)

MS (ESI⁺): 627 (M+H)

Example 216

4-[cis-3-[Bis(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-4-[[3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-1-piperidinyl]-4-oxobutanoic acid

[0470]



[0471] The compound (38.6 mg) obtained in Example 164 was reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 151 to obtain the title compound.

Yield: 18.8 mg

HPLC analysis (Condition B): Purity 95% (Retention time: 2.27 minutes)

MS (ESI+): 630 (M+H)

Example 245

3-Benzhydryl-N-(2-methoxybenzyl)-4-piperidineamine hydrochloride

(Process 1)

[0472] The compound obtained in Process 3 of Reference Example 3 was reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Process 2 of Reference Example 2 to obtain 4-amino-3-benzhydryl-1-piperidinecarboxylic acid tert-butyl ester.

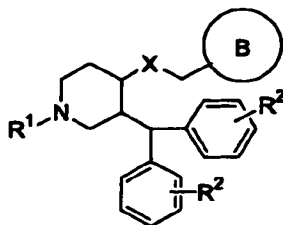
(Process 2)

[0473] The compound obtained in Process 1 and 2-methoxybenzaldehyde were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the methods described in Process 3 of Reference Example 2 and Example 1 to obtain the title compound.

MS (ESI+): 387 (M+H).

[0474] The compounds of the following Examples were synthesized from the compound obtained in Process 3 of Reference Example 3 as a starting material by reacting and treating in the same manner as in the method described in Example 245 using the respective corresponding benzaldehyde derivatives.

[Table 15]

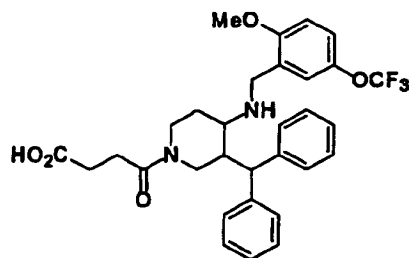


Ex. No.	Stereo-chemistry	R ¹	X	B	R ²	MS (ESI) (M+H) ⁺
245	(±)- <i>cis</i>	H	NH		H	387
271	(±)- <i>cis</i>	H	NH		H	493
295	(±)- <i>cis</i>	H	NH		H	471
320	(±)- <i>cis</i>	H	NH		H	465, 467

Example 319

4-[*cis*-3-Benzhydryl-4-[[2-methoxy-5-(trifluoromethoxy)benzyl]amino]-1-piperidinyl]-4-oxobutanoic acid trifluoroacetate

[0475]



[0476] The compound (32.5 mg) obtained in Example 314 was reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 151 to obtain the title compound.

Yield: 20.7 mg

HPLC analysis (Condition B): Purity 97% (Retention time: 1.61 minutes)

MS (ESI+): 571 (M+H)

Example 343

cis-3-[Bis(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-4-[(3,5-dimethylbenzyl)amino]-N-ethyl-1-piperidinecarboxamide trifluoroacetate

(Process 1)

[0477] To a solution of 4-amino-3-[bis(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-1-piperidinecarboxylic acid tert-butyl ester (9.92 g) in THF (80 ml), 1-[[[(benzyloxy)carbonyl]oxy]pyrrolidone-2,5-dione (6.75 g) was added, and the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 14 hours. The reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure, and then the residue was dissolved in ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with an aqueous 10% citric acid solution, an aqueous 5% sodium hydrogen carbonate solution and saturated brine, dried, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The obtained residue was isolated and purified by silica gel column chromatography (hexane : ethyl acetate = 2 : 1) to obtain cis-[[[(benzyloxy)carbonyl]amino]-3-[bis(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-1-piperidinecarboxylic acid tert-butyl ester as colorless amorphous (9.30 g).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) : δ 1.37 (9H, s), 1.68 (1H, br), 1.77 (1H, br), 2.50 (1H, br), 2.96 (1H, br), 3.74 (4H, m), 4.85 (1H, br), 4.95 (1H, d, J=11.4 Hz), 5.12 (1H, d, J=11.4 Hz), 6.87 (2H, t, J=8.6 Hz), 6.98 (2H, t, J=8.6 Hz), 7.09-7.39 (9H, m).

(Process 2)

[0478] To a solution of the compound (9.20 g) obtained in Process 1 in THF (40 ml), 4 N hydrochloric acid/ethyl acetate (15 ml) was added, and the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 3 hours. The reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure, and then the residue was crystallized from diethyl ether to obtain benzyl-cis-3-[bis(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-1-piperidinylcarbamate hydrochloride as white powder (7.21 g).

MS (ESI+): 437 (M+H)

(Process 3)

[0479] To a solution of the compound (3.00 g) obtained in Process 2 and diisopropylethylamine (1.1 ml) in THF (40 ml), ethyl isocyanate (0.55 ml) was added, and the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 12 hours. The reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure, and then the residue was dissolved in ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with an aqueous 5% sodium hydrogen carbonate solution and saturated brine, dried, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The obtained residue was isolated and purified by amine-treated silica gel column chromatography (hexane : ethyl acetate = 2 : 3) to obtain benzyl-cis-3-[bis(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-1-[(ethylamino)carbonyl]piperidinylcarbamate as white powder (2.75 g).

MS (ESI+): 508 (M+H)

(Process 4)

[0480] To a solution of the compound (2.75 g) obtained in Process 3 in methanol (100 ml), 10% Pd-C (0.28 g) was added, and the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 12 hours under hydrogen atmosphere of 1 atm. The catalyst was removed by filtration, and then the reaction solution was concentrated under reduced pressure. To the obtained residue, 4 N hydrochloric acid/ethyl acetate (5 ml) was added, and the mixture was crystallized from diethyl ether to obtain cis-3-[bis(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-N-ethyl-1-piperidinecarboxamide hydrochloride as white powder (2.53 g).

MS (ESI+): 374 (M+H)

Melting point: 184 - 186°C.

(Process 5)

[0481] To a solution of the compound (24.5 mg) obtained in Process 4 and 3,5-dimethylbenzaldehyde (16.1 mg) in dichloromethane (2.0 ml), NaBH(OAc)₃ (20.0 mg) was added, and the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 12 hours. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and then the residue was poured into a mixed solution of ethyl acetate and water. The organic layer was washed with saturated brine, and dried, and the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and then the residue was purified by preparative HPLC to obtain the title compound.

Yield: 14.0 mg

HPLC analysis (Condition B): Purity 100% (Retention time: 1.84 minutes)

MS (ESI+): 492 (M+H)

EP 1 553 084 A1

[0482] The compounds of the following Examples were synthesized from the compound obtained in Process 4 of Example 343 as a starting material by reacting and treating in the same manner as in the method described in Process 5 of Example 343 using the respective corresponding aldehyde derivatives.

5

[Table 16]

10

15

20

25

30

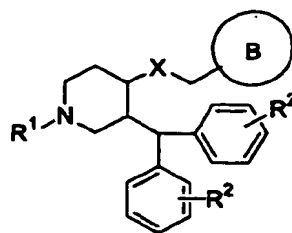
35

40

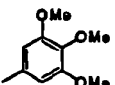
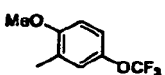
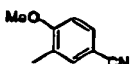
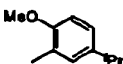
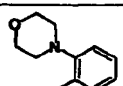
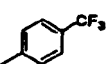
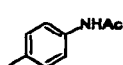
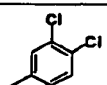
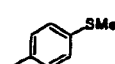


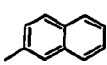

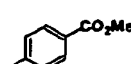

45

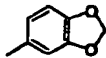
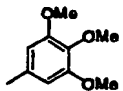




50

55



Ex. No.	Stereo-chemistry	R ¹	X	B	R ²	MS (ESI) (M+H) ⁺
343	(±)-cis	EtNHCO	NH		F	492
344	(±)-cis	EtNHCO	NH		F	494
345	(±)-cis	EtNHCO	NH		F	508
346	(±)-cis	EtNHCO	NH		F	532
347	(±)-cis	EtNHCO	NH		F	489
348	(±)-cis	EtNHCO	NH		F	548
349	(±)-cis	EtNHCO	NH		F	600
350	(±)-cis	EtNHCO	NH		F	492
351	(±)-cis	EtNHCO	NH		F	524
352	(±)-cis	EtNHCO	NH		F	524

5	353	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	NH		F	554
10	354	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	NH		F	578
15	355	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	NH		F	519
20	356	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	NH		F	536
25	357	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	NH		F	549
30	358	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	NH		F	532
35	359	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	NH		F	521
40	360	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	NH		F	532
45	361	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	NH		F	510
50	362	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	NH		F	454
55	363	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	NH		F	465
	364	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	NH		F	514
	365	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	NH		F	520
	366	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	NH		F	522
	367	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	NH		F	482

5	368	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	NH		F	508
10	369	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	NH		F	554
15	370	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	NH		F	498
20	371	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	NH		F	484
25	372	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	NH		F	470
	373	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	NH		F	465

Example 374

cis-3-[Bis(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-1-[3-(diethylamino)propanoyl]-N-(3,5-dimethylbenzyl)-4-piperidineamine trifluoroacetate

(Process 1)

[0483] To a solution of the compound (3.00 g) obtained in Process 2 of Example 343, diisopropylethylamine (2.4 ml) and 3-diethylaminopropionic acid hydrochloride (1.38 g) in dichloromethane (40 ml), WSC-HCl (1.46 g) and HOBt · H₂O (1.03 g) were added, and the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 24 hours. The reaction mixture was poured into water, and then the product was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with an aqueous 5% sodium hydrogen carbonate solution and saturated brine, dried, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The obtained residue was isolated and purified by amine-treated silica gel column chromatography (hexane : ethyl acetate = 1 : 3) to obtain benzyl-cis-3-[bis(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-1-[3-(diethylamino)propanoyl]piperidinylcarbamate as colorless amorphous (2.75 g).

MS (ESI+) : 564 (M+H)

(Process 2)

[0484] The compound (2.75 g) obtained in Process 1 was reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Process 4 of Example 343 to obtain cis-3-[bis(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-1-[3-(diethylamino)propanoyl]piperidineamine hydrochloride as white powder (2.53 g).

MS (ESI+) : 430 (M+H)

Melting point: 183 - 185°C.

(Process 3)

[0485] The compound (28.0 mg) obtained in Process 2 and 3,5-dimethylbenzaldehyde (16.1 mg) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Process 5 of Example 343 to obtain the title compound.

Yield: 24.3 mg

HPLC analysis (Condition B): Purity 99% (Retention time: 1.68 minutes)

MS (ESI+): 548 (M+H)

EP 1 553 084 A1

[0486] The compounds of the following Examples were synthesized from the compound obtained in Process 2 of Example 374 as a starting material by reacting and treating in the same manner as in the method described in Process 3 of Example 374 using the respective corresponding aldehyde derivatives.

5

[Table 17]

10

15

20

25

30

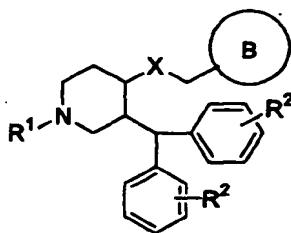
35

40

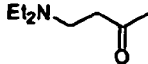
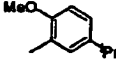
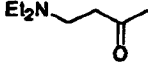
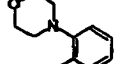
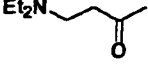
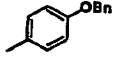
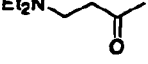
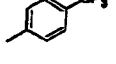
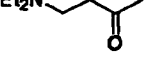


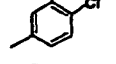
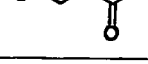
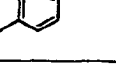
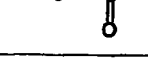
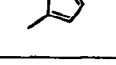
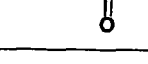
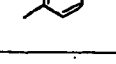
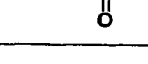

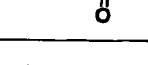
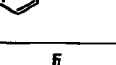
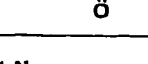
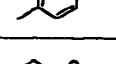
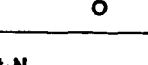
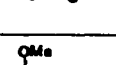
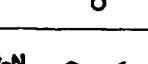

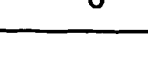

45

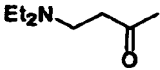

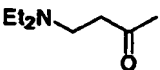

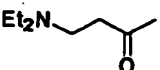

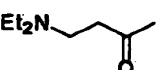

50

55



Ex. No.	Stereo-chemistry	R ¹	X	B	R ²	MS (ESI) (M+H) ⁺
374	(±)-cis		NH		F	548
375	(±)-cis		NH		F	550
376	(±)-cis		NH		F	564
377	(±)-cis		NH		F	588
378	(±)-cis		NH		F	656
379	(±)-cis		NH		F	548
380	(±)-cis		NH		F	580
381	(±)-cis		NH		F	580
382	(±)-cis		NH		F	610
383	(±)-cis		NH		F	634
384	(±)-cis		NH		F	575

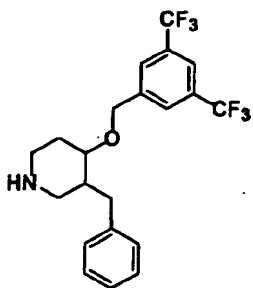
5	385	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		F	592
10	386	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		F	605
15	387	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		F	626
20	388	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		F	588
25	389	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		F	577
30	390	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		F	588
35	391	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		F	566
40	392	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		F	510
45	393	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		F	521
50	394	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		F	576
55	395	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		F	578
	396	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		F	538
	397	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		F	564
	398	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		F	610
	399	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		F	554

5	400	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		F	540
	401	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		F	526
10	402	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		F	521
15	403	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		F	521

Example 404

cis-3-Benzyl-4-[[3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]piperidine

[0487]



[0488] To a solution of the compound (4.15 g) obtained in Reference Example 55 in THF (10 ml), trifluoroacetic acid (25 ml) was added at 0°C, and the obtained mixture was stirred at room temperature for 2 hours. The reaction mixture was made basic with an aqueous 4 N sodium hydroxide solution, and then extracted with ethyl acetate. The extract was washed with an aqueous saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate solution and brine, dried, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure to obtain the title compound as pale yellow oil (3.73 g, quantitative).

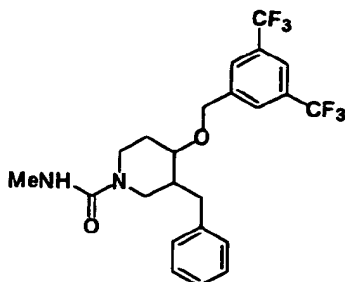
¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) : δ 1.65-1.90 (1H, m), 1.95-2.40 (2H, m), 2.55-2.80 (2H, m), 2.80-3.20 (4H, m), 3.60 (1H, brs), 4.42 (1H; d, J=12.6 Hz), 4.69 (1H, d, J=12.6 Hz), 5.26 (1H, brs), 7.05-7.35 (5H, m), 7.82 (2H, s), 7.85 (1H, s).

MS (ESI+) : 418 (M+H).

Example 405

cis-3-Benzyl-4-[[3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-N-methyl-1-piperidinecarboxamide

[0489]



[0490] To a solution of the compound (0.39 g) obtained in Example 404 in THF (10 ml), methyl isocyanate (0.12 ml) was added, and the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 17 hours. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and then the obtained residue was isolated and purified by silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate) to obtain the title compound as colorless crystals (0.27 g, 61%).

Melting point: 160 - 161°C.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) : δ 1.5-1.7 (1H, m), 1.85-2.20 (2H, m), 2.57-2.82 (2H, m), 2.80 (3H, d, J=4.4 Hz), 3.14 (1H, dd, J=13.0, 9.8 Hz), 3.25-3.65 (4H, m), 4.33 (1H, q, J=4.4 Hz), 4.46 (1H, d, J=12.6 Hz), 4.70 (1H, d, J=12.6 Hz), 7.10-7.35 (5H, m), 7.83 (3H, s).

MS (ESI+) : 475 (M+H)

Example 406

cis-1-Acetyl-3-benzyl-4-[[3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]piperidine

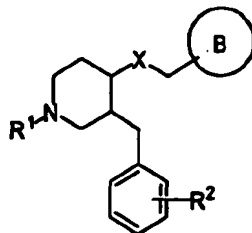
[0491] To a solution of the compound (0.40 g) obtained in Example 404 in THF (4 ml), acetyl chloride (0.075 ml) and Et₃N (0.147 ml) were added at room temperature, and the reaction mixture was stirred at the same temperature for 1 hour. The reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure, and then the residue was dissolved in ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with 1 N hydrochloric acid and brine, dried, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The obtained residue was purified by preparative thin layer chromatography to obtain the title compound as pale yellow oil (0.275 g, 79%).

HPLC analysis (Condition B): Purity 96% (Retention time: 4.00 minutes)

MS (ESI+): 460 (M+H).

[0492] The compounds of the following Examples were synthesized from the compound obtained in Example 404 as a starting material by reacting and treating in the same manner as in the method described in Example 406 using the respective corresponding acid chloride or sulfonyl chloride derivatives.

[Table 18]

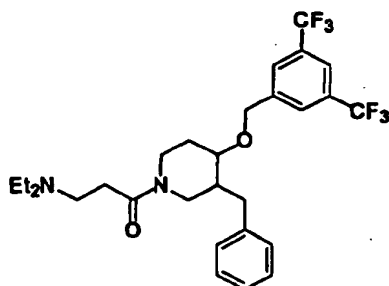


Ex. No.	Stereo-chemistry	R ¹	X	B	R ²	MS (ESI) (M+H) ⁺
406	(±)-cis	Ac	O		H	460
407	(±)-cis	MeSO ₂	O		H	496
408	(±)-cis		O		H	522

Example 409

cis-N-[3-[3-Benzyl-4-[[3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-1-piperidinyl]-3-oxopropyl]-N,N-diethylamine

[0493]



[0494] To a solution of the compound (0.15 g) obtained in Example 404, 3-diethylaminopropionic acid hydrochloride (0.078 mg), Et₃N (0.150 ml) and HOBT·H₂O (0.083 mg) in DMF (2 ml), WSC·HCl (0.138 mg) was added, and the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 12 hours. The reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure, and then the residue was dissolved in ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with an aqueous saturated sodium bicarbonate solution and brine, dried, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The obtained residue was purified by preparative thin layer chromatography to obtain the title compound as pale yellow oil (0.100 g, 51%).

HPLC analysis (Condition B): Purity: 97% (Retention time: 3.31 minutes)
MS (ESI+): 545 (M+H).

Example 410

Ethyl 2-[[[3-benzyl-4-[[3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-1-piperidiny]carbonyl]amino]benzoate

- 5 [0495] The compound (0.15 g) obtained in Example 404 and ethyl 2-isocyanatobenzoate (0.076 mg) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 6 excluding Et₃N to obtain the title compound as pale yellow oil (0.139 g, 64%).

HPLC analysis (Condition B): Purity 97% (Retention time: 4.74 minutes)

MS (ESI⁺): 609 (M+H)

- 10 [0496] The compounds of the following Examples were synthesized by reacting and treating in the same manner as in the method described in Example 410 using the respective corresponding isocyanate derivatives.

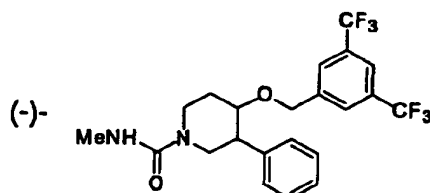
[Table 19]

Ex. No.	Stereo-chemistry	R ¹	X	B	R ²	MS (ESI) (M+H) ⁺
410	(±)-cis		O		H	609
411	(±)-cis		O		H	547

35 Example 412

(-)-cis-4-[[3,5-Bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-N-methyl-3-phenyl-1-piperidinecarboxamide

[0497]



- 50 [0498] The compound (4.22 g) obtained in Example 6 was optically resolved with chiral HPLC, and the fractions were concentrated under reduced pressure to obtain the title compound (1.34 g) as white powder.

Chiral HPLC condition

55 [0499]

Column: CHIRALCEL OJ 50 mm ID × 500 mm L
Solvent: hexane/ethanol = 97/3

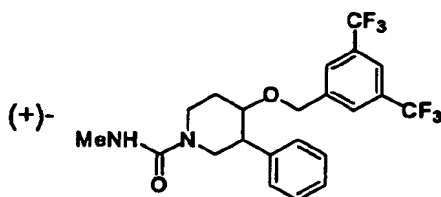
Flow rate: 70 ml/min
 Temperature: 30°C
 Detection method: UV 220 nm
 MS (ESI+) : 461 (M+H)

$[\alpha]_D^{25} -121.4^\circ$ (c 1.0, MeOH)

Example 413

(+)-cis-4-[[3,5-Bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-N-methyl-3-phenyl-1-piperidinecarboxamide

[0500]



[0501] The compound (4.22 g) obtained in Example 6 was optically resolved with chiral HPLC, and the fractions were concentrated under reduced pressure to obtain the title compound (1.34 g) as white powder.

Chiral HPLC condition

[0502]

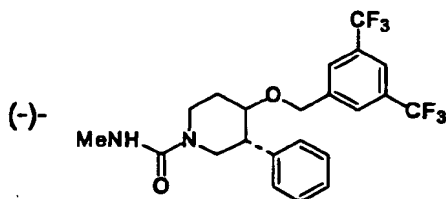
Column: CHIRALCEL OD 50 mm ID × 500 mm L
 Solvent: hexane/2-propanol = 8/2
 Flow rate: 70 ml/min
 Temperature: 30°C
 Detection method: UV 220 nm

$[\alpha]_D^{25} +120.7^\circ$ (c 1.0, MeOH)
 MS (ESI+) : 461 (M+H)

Example 414

(-)-trans-4-[[3,5-Bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-N-methyl-3-phenyl-1-piperidinecarboxamide

[0503]



(Process 1)

[0504] A crude product (7.7 g, (±)-trans-form : (±)-cis-form = 1 : 10) obtained in Process 3 of Reference Example 1 was reacted and treated in the same manner as in the methods described in Example 1 and Example 6 to obtain

EP 1 553 084 A1

4-[[3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-N-methyl-3-phenyl-1-piperidinecarboxamide in a mixture (4.2 g) of (±)-trans-form (±)-cis-form = 1 : 10.

(Process 2)

[0505] The compound (4.22 g) obtained in Process 1 was optically resolved with chiral HPLC, and the fractions were concentrated under reduced pressure to obtain the title compound (0.18 g) as white powder.

Chiral HPLC condition

[0506]

Column: CHIRALCEL OD 50 mm ID × 500 mm L

Solvent: hexane/2-propanol = 9/1

Flow rate: 70 ml/min

Temperature: 30°C

Detection method: UV 220 nm

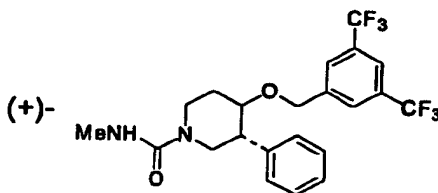
$[\alpha]_D^{25}$ -34.3° (c 1.0, MeOH)

MS (ESI+) : 461 (M+H)

Example 415

(+)-trans-4-[[3,5-Bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-N-methyl-3-phenyl-1-piperidinecarboxamide

[0507]



[0508] The compound (4.22 g) obtained in Process 1 of Example 414 was optically resolved with chiral HPLC, and the fractions were concentrated under reduced pressure to obtain the title compound (0.19 g) as white powder.

Chiral HPLC condition

[0509]

Column: CHIRALPAK AD 50 mm ID × 500 mm L

Solvent: hexane/2-propanol = 92/8

Flow rate: 70 ml/min

Temperature: 30°C

Detection method: UV 220 nm

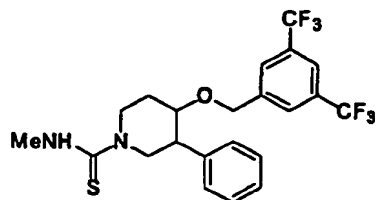
$[\alpha]_D^{25}$ +33.0° (c 1.0, MeOH)

MS (ESI+) : 461 (M+H)

Example 416

cis-4-[[3,5-Bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-N-methyl-3-phenyl-1-piperidinecarbothioamide

[0510]



[0511] To a solution of the compound (0.20 g) obtained in Example 1 and Et₃N (0.16 ml) in acetonitrile (10 ml), methyl isothiocyanate (0.083 g) was added, and the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 14 hours. The reaction mixture was poured into water, and then the product was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with an aqueous 10% citric acid solution and saturated brine, dried, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The obtained residue was isolated and purified by silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate : hexane = 1 : 1) to obtain the title compound as colorless oil (0.22 g, 99%).

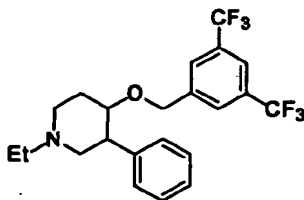
HPLC analysis (Condition B): Purity 99% (Retention time: 3.92 minutes)

MS (ESI+): 477 (M+H)

Example 417

cis-4-[[3,5-Bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-1-ethyl-3-phenylpiperidine oxalate

[0512]



[0513] To a solution of the compound (0.88 g) obtained in Example 2 in THF (10 ml), 1 M borane and THF complex (10 ml) was added at 0°C, and the reaction mixture was stirred at 80°C for 2 hours. The reaction mixture was cooled, and then methanol (2 ml) was added thereto, and concentrated under reduced pressure. To the obtained residue, 6 N hydrochloric acid (6 ml) and methanol (6 ml) were added, and the reaction mixture was stirred at 100°C for 2 hours. The reaction mixture was cooled, and then made basic with an aqueous 12 N sodium hydroxide solution. The mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure, and then the product was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with saturated brine, dried, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The obtained residue was isolated and purified by silica gel column chromatography (acetone: methanol = 20 : 1), and treated with 1 equivalent of oxalic acid to obtain the title compound as colorless crystals (0.52 g, 61%).

HPLC analysis (Condition B): Purity 99% (Retention time: 2.91 minutes)

MS (ESI+): 432 (M+H)

Example 418

cis-4-[[3,5-Bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-3-phenyl-1-propionylpiperidine

[0514] To a solution of the compound (132 mg) obtained in Example 1, propionic acid (32 mg) and Et₃N (0.083 ml) in DMF (5 ml), WSC-HCl (0.15 g) and HOBt-H₂O (0.092 g) were added, and the reaction mixture was stirred at room

EP 1 553 084 A1

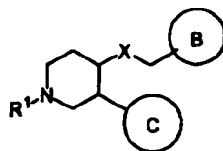
temperature for 24 hours. The reaction mixture was poured into water, and then the product was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with an aqueous saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate solution and saturated brine, dried, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The obtained residue was purified by preparative HPLC to obtain the title compound as colorless amorphous.

Yield: 75 mg


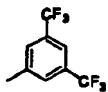

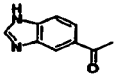
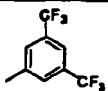

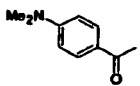
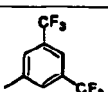

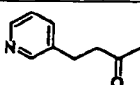
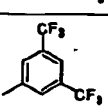


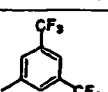


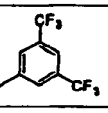


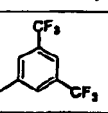

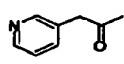
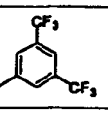

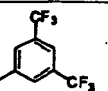

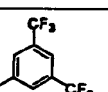

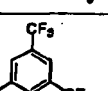


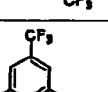


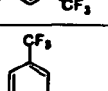

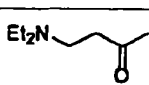
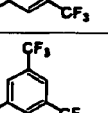

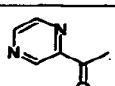
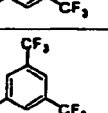

MS (ESI+): 460 (M+H)

[0515] The compounds of the following Examples were synthesized from the compound obtained in Examples 1, 23, 487, 509, 515, 519, 521, 524, 527, 534, 537, 539, 541, 543, 545, 547, 549, 553, 566, 609, 663, 691, 696, 701, 703, 708, 711, 714, 720, 732, 733, 734, 744, 794, 795 or 796 as a starting material by reacting and treating in the same manner as in the method described in Example 418 using the respective corresponding carboxylic acid derivatives.

[Table 20]



Ex. No.	Stereo-chemistry	R ¹	X	B	C	MS (ESI) (M+H) ⁺
418	(±)-cis	EtCO	O			460
419	(±)-cis		O			509
420	(±)-cis	MeOCH ₂ CO	O			476
422	(±)-cis	^t BuCO	O			489
423	(±)-cis		O			523
424	(±)-cis		O			512
425	(±)-cis		O			534
426	(±)-cis		O			514
428	(±)-cis		O			510
429	(±)-cis		O			514
430	(±)-cis	Et ₂ NCH ₂ CH ₂ CO	O			531
431	(±)-cis	MeO ₂ CCH ₂ CH ₂ CO	O			518

5	432	(±)-cis		O			514
	433	(±)-cis		O			548
10	434	(±)-cis		O			551
15	435	(±)-cis		O			537
20	436	(±)-cis		O			509
	437	(±)-cis		O			509
25	438	(±)-cis		O			509
30	439	(±)-cis		O			523
	442	(±)-cis	ⁿ PrCO	O			474
35	443	(±)-cis	ⁱ PrCO	O			474
40	444	(±)-cis	^t BuCO	O			488
45	453	(±)-cis		O			543
	454	(±)-cis		O			543
50	456	(±)-cis		O			531
55	457	(±)-cis		O			510

5

10

15

20

25

30

35

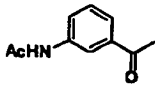
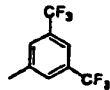

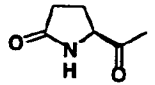
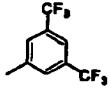

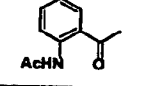
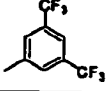

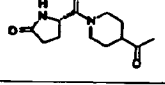
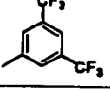

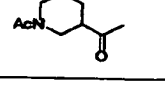
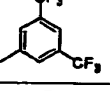

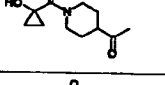
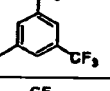

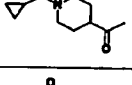
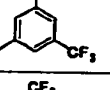

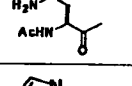
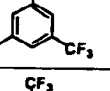

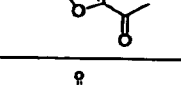
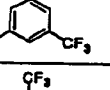

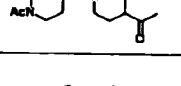
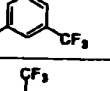

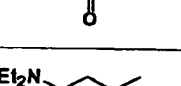
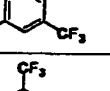

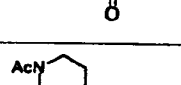
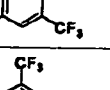
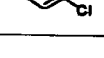
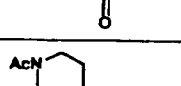
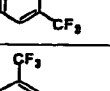
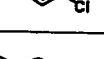
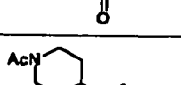
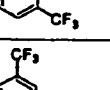
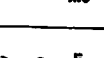
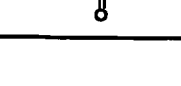
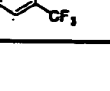
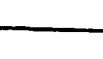
40

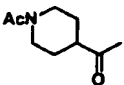
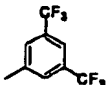

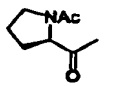
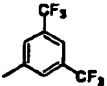

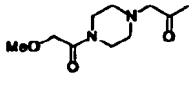
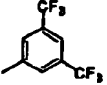

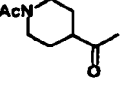
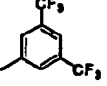

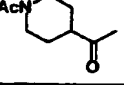
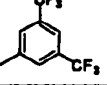

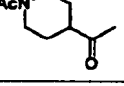
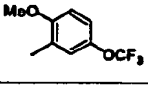

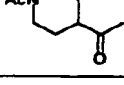
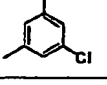

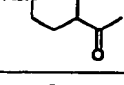
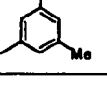

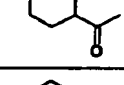
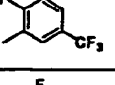

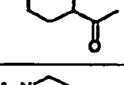
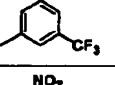

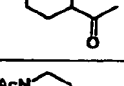
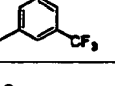

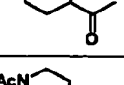
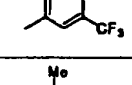

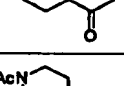
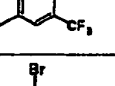

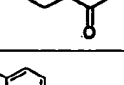
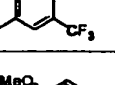

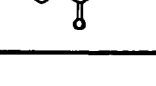
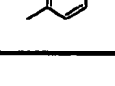

45

50

55

458	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			537
460	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			687
465	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			654
467	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			571
468	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			585
470	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			587
471	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			600
472	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			625
473	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			593
474	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			559
475	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			565
476	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			571
477	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			607
479	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			593
481	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			488

5	483	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			565
	484	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			515
10	485	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			565
15	488	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			626
	489	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			557
20	490	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			599
25	496	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			583
30	497	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			560
	499	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			529
35	502	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			668
40	507	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			503
45	514	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			599
	517	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			625
50	522	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			571
55	525	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			575

528	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			575
529	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			561
533	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			620
535	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			589
538	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			558
540	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			535
542	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			489
544	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			449
546	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			507
548	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			507
550	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			534
551	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			557
552	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			503
554	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			567, 569
558	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			419

5

10

15

20

25

30



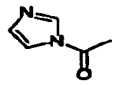


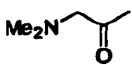


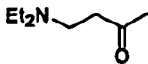


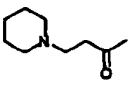










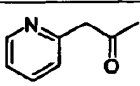


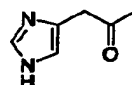


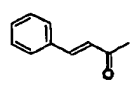


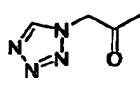


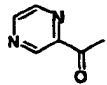


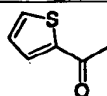


35

40

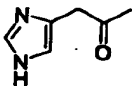
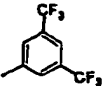

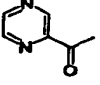
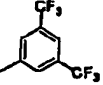

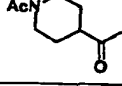
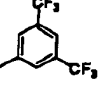

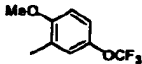

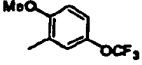

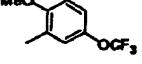

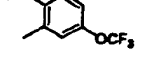

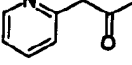
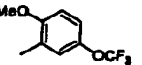

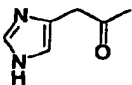
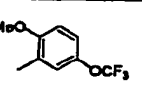

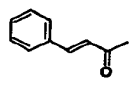
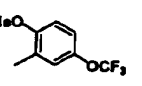

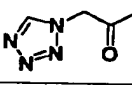
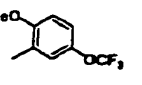

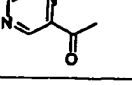
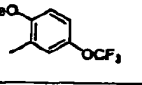

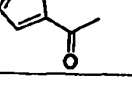
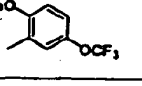

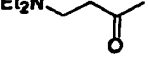
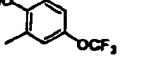

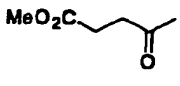
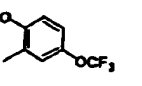

45


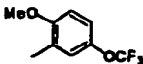

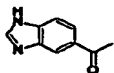
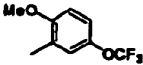

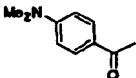
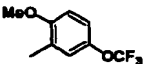

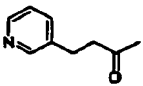
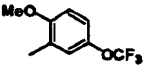

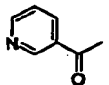
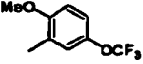

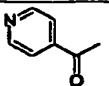
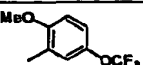

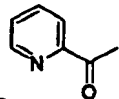
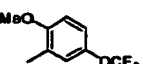

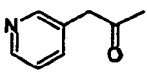
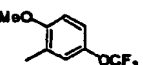

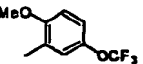

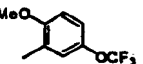

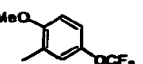


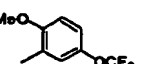


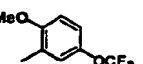

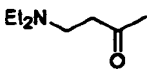
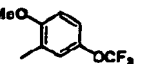

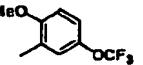

50

55

559	(±)- <i>cis</i>	Ac	NH			339
563	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			391
571	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			488
572	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			530
573	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			542
574	(±)- <i>cis</i>	Ac	NH			445
575	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtCO	NH			459
576	(±)- <i>cis</i>	MeOCH ₂ CO	NH			475
578	(±)- <i>cis</i>	^t BuCO	NH			488
579	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			522
580	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			511
581	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			533
582	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			513
584	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			509
585	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			513

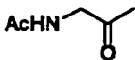
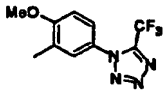

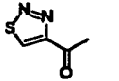
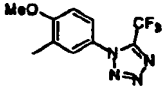

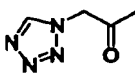
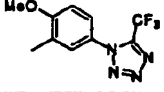

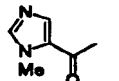
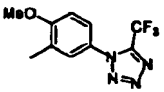


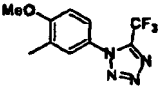

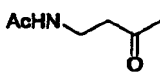
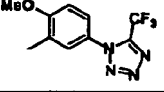


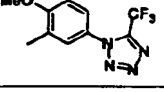

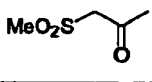
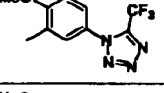

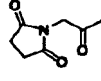
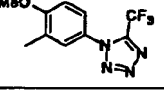

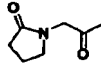
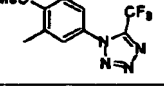


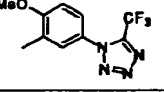

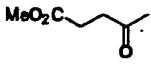
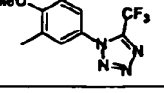

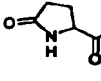
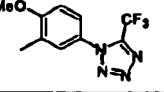

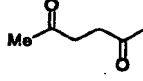
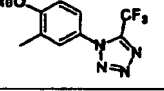


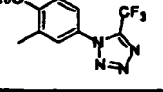

5	586	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			530
	587	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			517
10	588	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			513
15	589	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			547
	590	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			550
20	591	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			536
25	592	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			508
30	593	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			508
	594	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			508
35	595	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			522
40	598	(±)- <i>cis</i>	$n\text{PrCO}$	NH			473
	599	(±)- <i>cis</i>	$i\text{PrCO}$	NH			473
45	600	(±)- <i>cis</i>	$t\text{BuCO}$	NH			487
50	601	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			525
55	602	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			530

5	603	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			511
10	604	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			509
15	605	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			556
20	614	(±)- <i>cis</i>	Ac	NH			423
25	615	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtCO	NH			437
30	616	(±)- <i>cis</i>	MeOCH ₂ CO	NH			453
35	618	(±)- <i>cis</i>	^t BuCO	NH			466
40	619	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			500
45	620	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			489
50	621	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			511
55	622	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			491
	624	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			487
	625	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			491
	626	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			508
	627	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			495

5	628	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			491
	629	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			525
10	630	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			528
15	631	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			514
	632	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			486
20	633	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			486
25	634	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			486
30	635	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			500
	638	(±)- <i>cis</i>	ⁿ PrCO	NH			451
35	639	(±)- <i>cis</i>	ⁱ PrCO	NH			451
40	640	(±)- <i>cis</i>	^t BuCO	NH			465
45	641	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			487
	642	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			491
50	643	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			508
55	644	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtCO	NH			437

5	646	(±)-cis		NH			486
	647	(±)-cis		NH			528
10	648	(±)-cis		NH			491
15	649	(±)-cis		NH			486
20	651	(±)-cis		NH			534
	653	(±)-cis		NH			520
25	658	(±)-cis		NH			597
30	666	(±)-cis	EtCO	NH			505
35	694	(±)-cis	MeOCH ₂ CO	NH			423
	695	(±)-cis		NH			504
40	699	(±)-cis	MeOCH ₂ CO	NH			465
45	700	(±)-cis		NH			546
	705	(±)-cis	MeOCH ₂ CO	NH			411
50	706	(±)-cis		NH			492
55	710	(±)-cis		NH			586

5	713	(±)-cis		NH			547
10	716	(±)-cis		NH			503
15	717	(±)-cis		NH			584
20	723	(±)-cis		NH			517
25	736	(±)-cis		NH			543
30	737	(±)-cis		NH			586
35	738	(±)-cis		NH			586
40	739	(±)-cis		NH			555
45	740	(±)-cis		NH			519
50	741	(±)-cis		NH			527
55	742	(±)-cis		NH			531
	743	(±)-cis		NH			654
	745	(±)-cis		NH			558
	751	(±)-cis		NH			549
	752	(±)-cis		NH			533

5	753	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			532
	756	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			545
10	757	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			543
15	758	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			541
	760	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			491
20	761	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			546
25	762	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			475
30	763	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			553
	764	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			572
35	765	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			558
40	767	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			519
	768	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			547
45	769	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			544
50	770	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			531
55	771	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			517

5	773	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			601
	774	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			505
10	775	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			590
15	776	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			560
	777	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			559
20	778	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			587
25	779	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			573
30	780	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			572
	781	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			541
35	782	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			573
40	783	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			518
45	784	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			546
	788	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			562
50	790	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			654
55	792	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			600

5	797	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			544
	798	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			544
10	802	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			541
15	803	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			542
20	804	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			602
	805	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			586
25	806	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			585
30	807	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			558
35	808	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			500

Example 421

40 *cis*-2-[4-[[3,5-Bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-3-phenyl-1-piperidinyl]-2-oxoethylamine trifluoroacetate

[0516] To a solution of the compound (35 mg) obtained in Example 1, Boc-glycine (15 mg) and Et₃N (22 μl) in DMF (2.0 ml), WSC·HCl (17 mg) and HOBt·H₂O (13 mg) were added, and the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 24 hours. The reaction mixture was poured into water, and then the product was extracted with ethyl acetate.
 45 The organic layer was washed with an aqueous saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate solution and saturated brine, and dried, and the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and then the residue was purified by preparative HPLC. To the obtained product, trifluoroacetic acid (1 ml) was added and the reaction mixture was stirred for 1 hour, and then the solvent was evaporated to obtain the title compound.

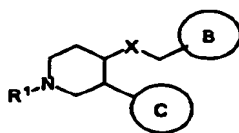
Yield: 19 mg

50 MS (ESI⁺): 461 (M+H)

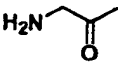
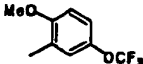


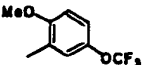

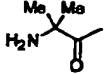
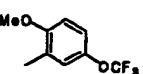

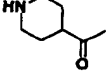
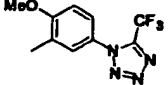

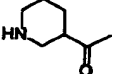
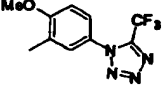

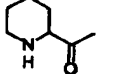
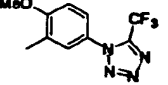

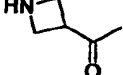
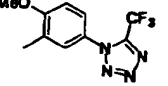

[0517] The compounds of the following Examples were synthesized by reacting and treating in the same manner as in the method described in Example 421 from the compounds obtained in Examples 1, 509, 527, 566, 609 or 701 as a starting material, using respective corresponding amino acid derivatives protected with Boc group.

55

[Table 21]



Ex. No.	Stereo-chemistry	R ¹	X	B	C	MS (ESI) (M+H) ⁺
421	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			461
427	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			489
441	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			515
455	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			489
486	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			526
487	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			515
493	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			487
494	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			529
515	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			583
531	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			548
577	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			460
583	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			488

617	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			438
623	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			466
645	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			466
732	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			544
733	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			544
734	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			544
744	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			516

Example 440

Ethyl [[[cis-4-[[3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-3-phenyl-1-piperidinyl]carbonyl]amino]acetate

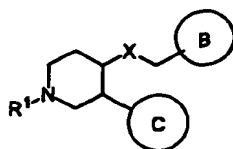
[0518] To a solution of the compound (35 mg) obtained in Example 1 and Et₃N (22 μl) in THF (2.0 ml), ethyl isocyanatoacetate (11 mg) was added at 0°C, and the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 3 hours. To the reaction mixture, an aqueous saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate solution was added, and then the product was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with saturated brine, dried, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by preparative HPLC to obtain the title compound.

Yield: 17 mg

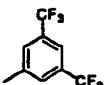

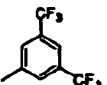

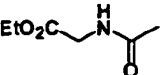
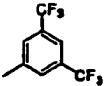

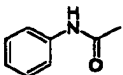
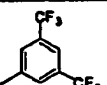

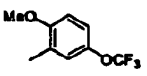

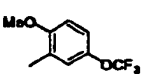

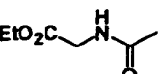
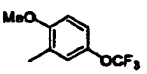

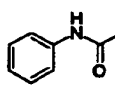
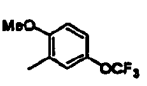

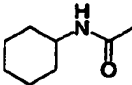
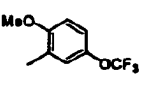

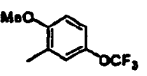

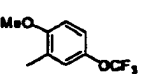

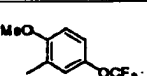

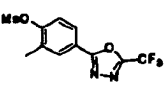

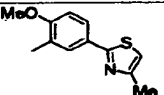

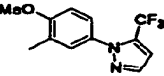

MS (ESI+): 533 (M+H)

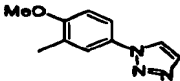

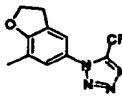

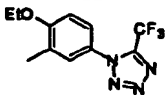

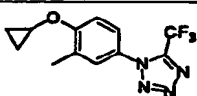

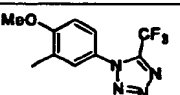

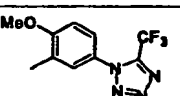

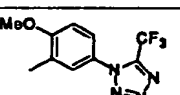
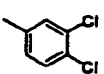
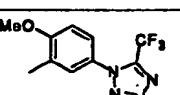
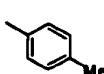
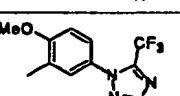

[0519] The compounds of the following Examples were synthesized from the compound obtained in Examples 1, 23, 24, 509, 519, 521, 524, 527, 534, 566, 609, 663, 701, 708, 711, 714, 718, 720, 724, 726, 794, 795 or 796 as a starting material by reacting and treating in the same manner as in the method described in Example 440 using the respective corresponding isocyanate derivatives.

[Table 22]



Ex. No.	Stereochemistry	R ¹	X	B	C	MS (ESI) (M+H) ⁺
440	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			533
469	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			572
513	(±)- <i>cis</i>	MeNHCO	O			529
520	(±)- <i>cis</i>	MeNHCO	O			475
523	(±)- <i>cis</i>	MeNHCO	O			475
526	(±)- <i>cis</i>	MeNHCO	O			479
530	(±)- <i>cis</i>	MeNHCO	O			479
536	(±)- <i>cis</i>	MeNHCO	O			493
560	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	NH			368
561	(±)- <i>cis</i>	MeNHCO	NH			354
562	(±)- <i>trans</i>	MeNHCO	NH			354
568	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	NH			474

5	569	(±)- <i>cis</i>	MeNHCO	NH			460
	570	(±)- <i>trans</i>	MeNHCO	NH			460
10	596	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			532
15	597	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			522
20	610	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	NH			452
	611	(±)- <i>cis</i>	MeNHCO	NH			438
25	636	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			510
30	637	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			500
35	650	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			506
	664	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	NH			520
40	665	(±)- <i>cis</i>	<i>i</i> PrNHCO	NH			534
45	667	(±)- <i>cis</i>	MeNHCO	NH			506
	709	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	NH			504
50	712	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	NH			465
55	715	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	NH			502

5	719	(±)-cis	EtNHCO	NH			435
10	722	(±)-cis	MeNHCO	NH			502
15	725	(±)-cis	EtNHCO	NH			518
20	727	(±)-cis	EtNHCO	NH			530
25	729	(±)-cis	ⁱ PrNHCO	NH			518
30	730	(±)-cis	^t BuNHCO	NH			532
35	789	(±)-cis	EtNHCO	NH			572
	791	(±)-cis	EtNHCO	NH			518
	793	(±)-cis	EtNHCO	NH			522

Example 445

cis-4-[[3,5-Bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-3-phenyl-1-[(1-methyl-4-piperidiny)carbonyl]piperidine

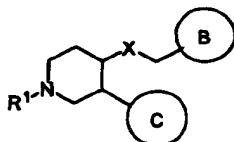
[0520] To an aqueous solution of the compound (210 mg) obtained in Example 441 and Et₃N (38 mg) in 35% formalin (1.2 ml), formic acid (1.2 ml) was added, and the reaction mixture was stirred at 80°C for 1 hour. The reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure, and then to the residue, ethyl acetate was added. The reaction mixture was made basic with an aqueous sodium hydroxide solution, and then the organic layer was washed with saturated brine, dried, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The obtained residue was purified by preparative HPLC to obtain the title compound.

Yield: 173 mg

MS (ESI⁺) : 529 (M+H)

[0521] The compounds of the following Examples were synthesized from the compound obtained in Example 515 as a starting material by reacting and treating in the same manner as in the method described in Example 445.

[Table 23]



Ex. No.	Stereo-chemistry	R ¹	X	B	C	MS (ESI) (M+H) ⁺
445	(±)-cis		O			529
516	(±)-cis		O			597

Example 446

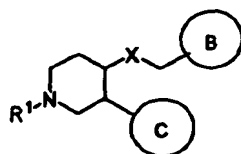
cis-4-[[3,5-Bis[(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-3-phenyl-1-(1-piperidinylcarbonyl)piperidine

[0522] To a solution of the compound (100 mg) obtained in Example 1 and Et₃N (70 mg) in DMF (5.0 ml), piperidine-1-carbonyl chloride (44 mg) was added, and the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 2 hours. The reaction mixture was poured into water, and then the product was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with an aqueous 3% potassium hydrogensulfate solution and saturated brine, dried, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The obtained residue was isolated and purified by silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate) to obtain the title compound as pale yellow oil (0.11 g).

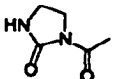


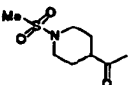


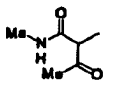


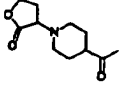


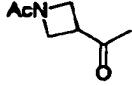


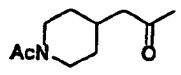


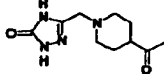


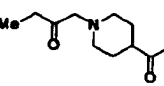


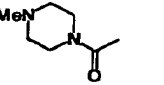
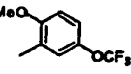

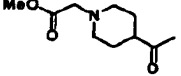


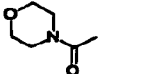


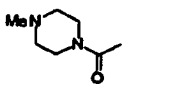


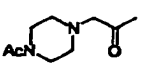






MS (ESI⁺) : 515 (M+H)

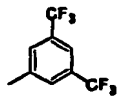

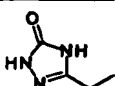
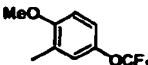

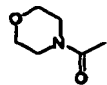
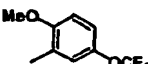


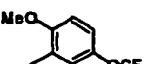

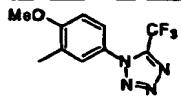

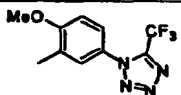

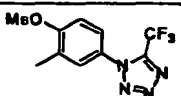

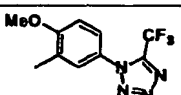

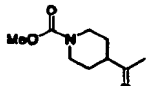
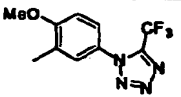

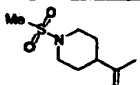
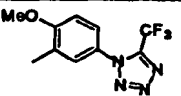

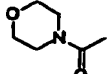
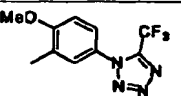

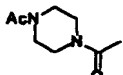
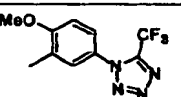

[0523] The compounds of the following Examples were synthesized from the compounds obtained in Examples 1, 441, 493, 509, 527, 566, 609, 701 and 732 as starting materials by reacting and treating in the same manner as in the method described in Example 446 using the respective corresponding halides (carbamoyl chloride, sulfonyl chloride, acid chloride, alkyl halide, aryl halide, acid anhydride derivatives, etc).

[Table 24]



Ex. No.	Stereo-chemistry	R ¹	X	B	C	MS (ESI) (M+H) ⁺
446	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			515
447	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			517
448	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			530
449	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			511
450	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			622
452	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			571
459	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			633
461	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			619
462	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			633
464	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			605
466	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			557
478	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			611

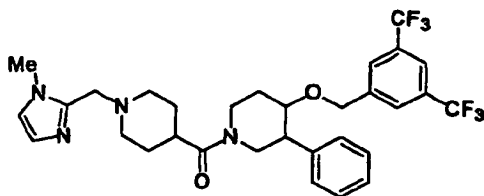
5	480	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			516
10	482	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			593
15	491	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			517
20	492	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			599
25	495	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			529
30	498	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			571
35	500	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			612
40	501	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			585
45	654	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			507
50	508	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			624
55	510	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			585
	511	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			598
	532	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			590
	606	(±)- <i>cis</i>	Et	NH			409
	607	(±)- <i>cis</i>	MeSO ₂	NH			459

5	608	(±)-cis	MeOCO	NH			439
10	652	(±)-cis		NH			478
15	655	(±)-cis		NH			494
20	656	(±)-cis		NH			492
25	731	(±)-cis	Me ₂ NCO	NH			504
30	748	(±)-cis	Et	NH			461
35	749	(±)-cis	MeSO ₂	NH			511
40	750	(±)-cis	MeOCO	NH			491
45	754	(±)-cis		NH			602
50	755	(±)-cis		NH			622
55	759	(±)-cis		NH			546
	766	(±)-cis		NH			587

Example 451

cis-4-[[3,5-Bis (trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-1-[[1-[(1-methyl-1H-imidazol-2-yl)methyl]-4-piperidiny]carbonyl]-3-phenylpiperidine hydrochloride

[0524]



[0525] To a solution of the compound (100 mg) obtained in Process 2 of Example 69 and 1-methyl-1H-imidazole-2-carbaldehyde (80 mg) in DMF (1 ml) /THF (5 ml), acetic acid (110 mg) and NaBH(OAc)₃ (154 mg) were added, and the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 13 hours. To the reaction solution, an aqueous saturated sodium bicarbonate solution was added, and the product was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with saturated brine, dried, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The obtained residue was isolated and purified by silica gel column chromatography (chloroform : methanol = 20 : 1), and treated with 4 N hydrochloric acid/ethyl acetate to obtain the title compound (80 mg) as colorless powder.

MS (ESI+) : 609 (M+H)

Example 463

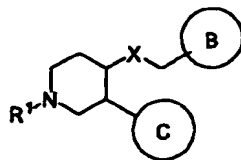
1-Acetyl-4-[[cis-4-[[3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-3-phenyl-1-piperidiny]carbonyl]piperazine

[0526] To a solution of the compound (100 mg) obtained in Example 1 in DMF (5 ml), the compound (70 mg) obtained in Reference Example 24 and potassium carbonate (94 mg) were added, and the reaction mixture was stirred at 120°C for 3 hours. To the reaction solution, water was added, and the product was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with an aqueous 3% potassium hydrogensulfate solution, an aqueous saturated sodium bicarbonate solution and saturated brine, dried, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The obtained residue was isolated and purified by silica gel column chromatography (chloroform : methanol = 100 : 1) to obtain the title compound (70 mg) as pale yellow oil.

MS (ESI+) : 558 (M+H)

[0527] The compounds of the following Examples were synthesized from the compounds obtained in Examples 1, 609 or 701 as starting materials by reacting and treating in the same manner as in the method described in Example 463 using the compounds obtained in Reference Examples 25 to 27 (the obtained product was treated with hydrochloric acid in Example 772).

[Table 25]



Ex. No.	Stereo-chemistry	R¹	X	B	C	MS (ESI) (M+H)⁺
463	(±)-cis		O			558
654	(±)-cis		NH			507
659	(±)-cis		NH			506
735	(±)-cis		NH			558
746	(±)-cis		NH			516
772	(±)-cis		NH			559

Example 509

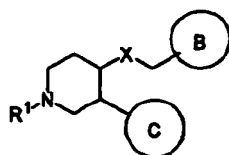
cis-4-[[3,5-Bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyloxy]-3-(3,4-dichlorophenyl)piperidine hydrochloride

[0528] To a solution of the compound (1.70 g) obtained in Reference Example 8 in THF (5 ml), trifluoroacetic acid (7 ml) was added at 0°C, and the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 30 minutes. The reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure, and then the residue was dissolved in ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with an aqueous saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate solution and brine, dried, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The obtained residue was treated with a 4 N hydrochloric acid/ethyl acetate solution (0.8 ml) to obtain the title compound as colorless crystals (1.20 g).









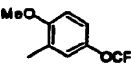

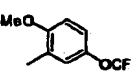

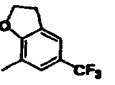

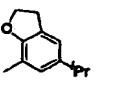

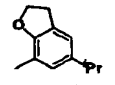

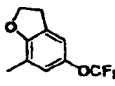

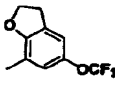

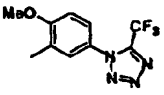

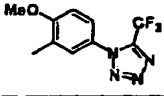

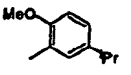

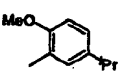

MS (ESI+): 472 (M+H)

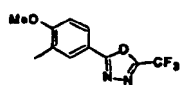

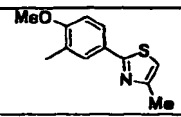

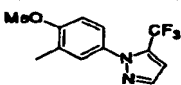

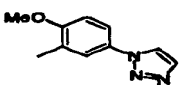

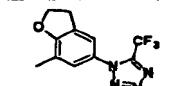

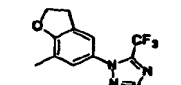

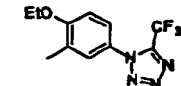

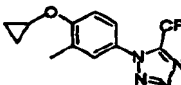

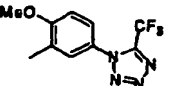

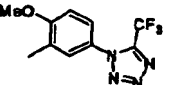

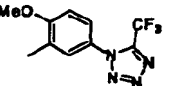

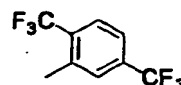

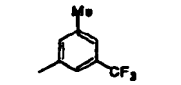

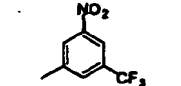

[0529] The compounds of the following Examples were synthesized by reacting and treating in the same manner as in the method described in Example 509 using the compounds obtained in Reference Examples 9 to 23 and 35 to 54.

[Table 26]



Ex. No.	Stereo-chemistry	R¹	X	B	C	MS (ESI) (M+H)⁺
509	(±)-cis	H	O			472
519	(±)-cis	H	O			418
521	(±)-cis	H	O			418
524	(±)-cis	H	O			422
527	(±)-cis	H	O			422
534	(±)-cis	H	O			436
537	(±)-cis	H	O			405
539	(±)-cis	H	O			382
541	(±)-cis	H	O			336
543	(±)-cis	H	O			296
545	(±)-cis	H	O			354
547	(±)-cis	H	O			354

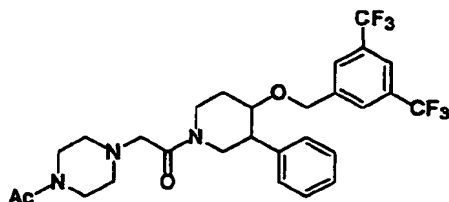
5	549	(±)- <i>cis</i>	H	O			381
	553	(±)- <i>cis</i>	H	O			414, 416
10	566	(±)- <i>cis</i>	H	NH			403
15	567	(±)- <i>trans</i>	H	NH			403
	609	(±)- <i>cis</i>	H	NH			381
20	663	(±)- <i>cis</i>	H	NH			449
25	690	(±)- <i>cis</i>	H	NH			377
30	691	(±)- <i>cis</i>	H	NH			351
	692	(±)- <i>trans</i>	H	NH			351
35	696	(±)- <i>cis</i>	H	NH			393
40	697	(±)- <i>trans</i>	H	NH			393
45	701	(±)- <i>cis</i>	H	NH			433
	702	(±)- <i>trans</i>	H	NH			433
50	703	(±)- <i>cis</i>	H	NH			339
55	704	(±)- <i>trans</i>	H	NH			339

5	708	(±)- <i>cis</i>	H	NH			433
	711	(±)- <i>cis</i>	H	NH			394
10	714	(±)- <i>cis</i>	H	NH			431
15	718	(±)- <i>cis</i>	H	NH			364
20	720	(±)- <i>cis</i>	H	NH			445
	721	(±)- <i>trans</i>	H	NH			445
25	724	(±)- <i>cis</i>	H	NH			447
30	726	(±)- <i>cis</i>	H	NH			459
35	794	(±)- <i>cis</i>	H	NH			575
	795	(±)- <i>cis</i>	H	NH			447
40	796	(±)- <i>cis</i>	H	NH			451
45	799	(±)- <i>cis</i>	H	O			404
50	800	(±)- <i>cis</i>	H	O			350
55	801	(±)- <i>cis</i>	H	O			381

Example 503

1-Acetyl-4-(2-(cis-4-((3,5-bis (trifluoromethyl)benzyl)oxy)-3-phenyl-1-piperidinyl)-2-oxoethyl)piperazine hydrochloride

[0530]



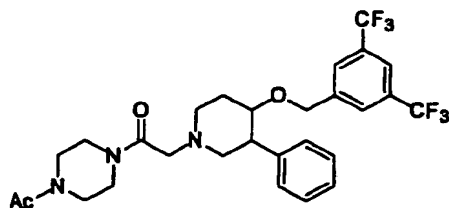
[0531] To a solution of the compound (175 mg) obtained in Example 1 and diisopropylethylamine (113 mg) in DMF (5 ml), chloroacetyl chloride (50 mg) was added at room temperature, and the reaction mixture was stirred for 1 hour. To the reaction solution, N-ethyl-diisopropylamine (113 mg), sodium iodide (180 mg) and 1-acetyl-piperazine (102 mg) were added and the reaction mixture was further stirred for 5 hours. To the reaction solution, water was added, and the product was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine, dried, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The obtained residue was treated with 4 N hydrochloric acid/ethyl acetate to obtain the title compound (150 mg) as colorless powder.

MS (ESI+): 572 (M+H).

Example 504

1-Acetyl-4-((cis-4-((3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl)oxy)-3-phenyl-1-piperidinyl)acetyl)piperazine hydrochloride

[0532]



[0533] To a solution of 1-acetyl-piperazine (38 mg) and diisopropylethylamine (45 mg) in DMF (5 ml), chloroacetyl chloride (34 mg) was added at room temperature, and the reaction mixture was stirred for 30 minutes. To the reaction solution, N-ethyl-diisopropylamine (90 mg), sodium iodide (103 mg) and the compound (100 mg) obtained in Example 1 were added and the reaction mixture was further stirred for 4 hours. To the reaction solution, water was added, and the product was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine, dried, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The obtained residue was treated with 4 N hydrochloric acid/ethyl acetate to obtain the title compound (96 mg) as pale brown powder.

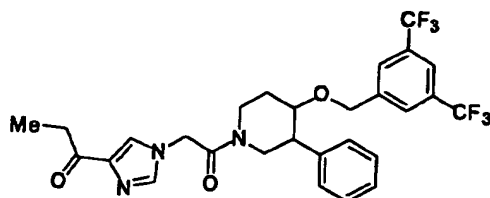
MS (ESI+): 572 (M+H).

Example 505

1-[1-[2-[cis-4-[[3,5-Bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-3-phenyl-1-piperidiny]-2-oxoethyl]-1H-imidazol-4-yl]-1-propanone

5 [0534]

10



15

[0535] The compound obtained in Example 1 and (1H-imidazol-4-yl)-1-propanone were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 503 to obtain the title compound.

MS (ESI+): 568 (M+H).

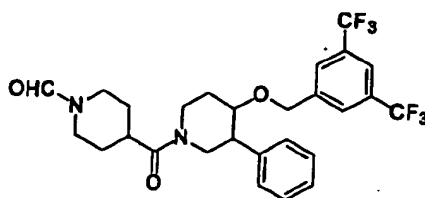
20 Example 506

4-((cis-4-((3,5-Bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl)oxy)-3-phenyl-1-piperidinyl)carbonyl)-1-piperidine carbaldehyde

[0536]

25

30



35 [0537] To a solution of the compound (102 mg) obtained in Process 2 of Example 69 in acetonitrile (8 ml), ammonium formate (876 mg) was added, and the reaction mixture was stirred for 60 hours under boiling reflux conditions. To the reaction solution, saturated brine was added, and the product was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was dried, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The obtained residue was isolated and purified by silica gel column chromatography (chloroform : methanol = 10 : 1) to obtain the title compound (44 mg) as colorless amorphous.

40

MS (ESI+): 543 (M+H).

Example 512

45 cis-4-[[3,5-Bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-3-(3,4-dichlorophenyl)-1-phenylpiperidine

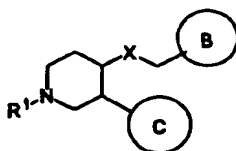
[0538] To a solution of the compound (200 mg) obtained in Example 1, bromobenzene (0.054 ml), tris(dibenzylideneacetone)dipalladium(0) (11 mg) and sodium tert-butoxide (94 mg) in toluene (5.0 ml), (±)-2,2'-bis(diphenylphosphino)-1,1'-binaphthyl((±)-BINAP) (7.3 mg) was added, and the reaction mixture was stirred at 85°C for 17 hours under argon atmosphere. The reaction mixture was poured into water, and then the product was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with saturated brine, dried, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The obtained residue was isolated and purified by silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate : hexane = 1 : 10 → 1 : 4) to obtain the title compound as colorless oil (120 mg, 55%).

50

MS (ESI+): 548 (M+H)

55 [0539] The compounds of the following Examples were synthesized from Examples 515 or 609 as a starting material by reacting and treating in the same manner as in the method described in Example 512 using the respective corresponding halides.

[Table 27]



Ex. No.	Stereo-chemistry	R ¹	X	B	C	MS (ESI) (M+H) ⁺
512	(±)-cis	Ph	O			548
518	(±)-cis		O			661
662	(±)-cis	Ph	NH			457

Example 555

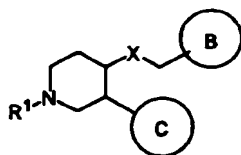
cis-1-[(1-Acetyl-4-piperidiny)carbonyl]-3-phenyl-4-[[5-(trifluoromethyl)-1,1'-biphenyl-3-yl]methoxy]piperidine

[0540] To a solution of the compound (250 mg) obtained in Example 554 in toluene (4 ml)/ethanol (2 ml), dihydroxyphenylborane (107 mg), tetrakis(triphenylphosphine) palladium (0) (25 mg), sodium carbonate (186 mg) and water (2 ml) were added, and the reaction mixture was stirred at 100°C for 4 hours. To the reaction solution, water was added, and the product was extracted with dichloromethane. The organic layer was dried, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The obtained residue was isolated and purified by silica gel column chromatography (chloroform : methanol = 10 : 1) to obtain the title compound (111 mg) as colorless amorphous.

MS (ESI⁺) : 565 (M+H).

[0541] The compounds of the following Examples were synthesized from the compound of Examples 554 or 564 as a starting material by reacting and treating in the same manner as in the method described in Example 555 using the respective corresponding boronic acid derivatives.

[Table 28]

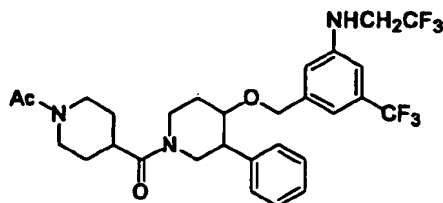


Ex. No.	Stereochemistry	R ¹	X	B	C	MS (ESI) (M+H) ⁺
555	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			565
556	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			633
669	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	NH			434
671	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	NH			444
672	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	NH			450
676	(±)- <i>cis</i>	MeNHCO	NH			430
683	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	NH			456
686	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	NH			445
687	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	NH			445

Example 557

N-[3-[[[cis-1-[(1-Acetyl-4-piperidiny)carbonyl]-3-phenyl-4-piperidinyloxy)methyl]-5-(trifluoromethyl)phenyl]-N-(2,2,2-trifluoroethyl)amine

[0542]



[0543] The compound (150 mg) obtained in Example 554, (\pm)-BINAP (12 mg), sodium tert-butoxide (39 mg), tris (dibenzylideneacetone)dipalladium(0) (8 mg), 2,2,2-trifluoroethylamine (40 mg) and toluene (15 ml) were mixed under argon atmosphere, and stirred at 100°C for 2 hours (under argon atmosphere). To the reaction solution, water was added, and the product was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with saturated brine, dried, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The obtained residue was isolated and purified by preparative HPLC to obtain the title compound (22 mg) as colorless amorphous.

MS (ESI+): 586 (M+H).

Example 564

cis-4-[(5-Bromo-2-methoxybenzyl)amino]-N-ethyl-3-phenyl-1-piperidinecarboxamide

(Process 1)

[0544] To a solution of the compound (5.0 g) obtained in Process 4 of Reference Example 1 and Et₃N (4.8 g) in acetonitrile (100 ml), ethyl isocyanate (5.3 g) was added, and the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 6 hours. The reaction mixture was poured into water, and then the product was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with an aqueous 10% citric acid solution and saturated brine, dried, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The obtained residue was isolated and purified by silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate : hexane : methanol = 40 : 10 : 1) to obtain N-ethyl-4-oxo-3-phenylpiperidine-1-carboxamide as colorless oil (6.2 g).

(Process 2)

[0545] The compound (6.5 g) obtained in Process 1 was reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Process 1 and Process 2 of Reference Example 2 to obtain 4-amino-N-ethyl-3-phenylpiperidine-1-carboxamide as pale yellow powder (3.3 g).

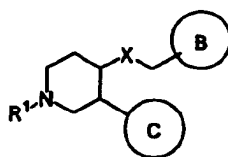
(Process 3)

[0546] The compound (0.31 g) obtained in Process 2 and 5-bromo-2-methoxybenzaldehyde (0.27 g) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Process 3 of Reference Example 2 to obtain the title compound as colorless crystals (0.18 g).

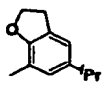

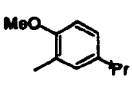

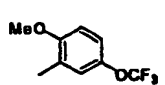

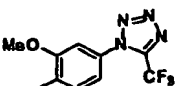

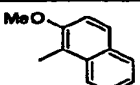

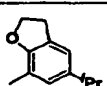

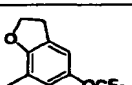

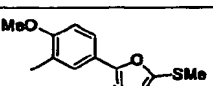

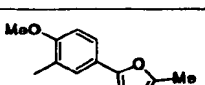

MS (ESI+): 446, 448 (M+H).

[0547] The compounds of the following Examples were synthesized from the compound obtained in Process 4 of Reference Example 1 as a starting material by reacting and treating in the same manner as in the method described in Example 564 using methyl isocyanate or ethyl isocyanate and the respective corresponding benzaldehyde derivatives.

[Table 29]



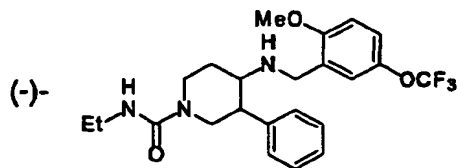
Ex. No.	Stereo-chemistry	R ¹	X	B	C	MS (ESI) (M+H) ⁺
564	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	NH			446, 448
565	(±)- <i>cis</i>	MeNHCO	NH			432, 434
668	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	NH			398
670	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	NH			339
673	(±)- <i>cis</i>	MeNHCO	NH			379
674	(±)- <i>cis</i>	MeNHCO	NH			422
675	(±)- <i>cis</i>	MeNHCO	NH			396
677	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	NH			459
678	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	NH			464
679	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	NH			448
680	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	NH			394
681	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	NH			424

5	682	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	NH			422
10	684	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	NH			410
15	685	(±)- <i>trans</i>	EtNHCO	NH			452
20	688	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	NH			504
25	689	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	NH			418
30	693	(±)- <i>cis</i>	MeNHCO	NH			408
35	698	(±)- <i>cis</i>	MeNHCO	NH			450
	707	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	NH			482
	728	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	NH			450

Example 612

(-)-*cis*-N-Ethyl-4-[[2-methoxy-5-(trifluoromethoxy)benzyl]amino]-3-phenyl-1-piperidinecarboxamide

[0548]



[0549] The compound (1.70 g) obtained in Example 610 was optically resolved with chiral HPLC, and the fractions were concentrated under reduced pressure to obtain the title compound (0.68 g) as white powder.

Chiral HPLC condition

[0550]

5 Column: CHIRALPAK AS 50 mm ID × 500 mm L
 Solvent: hexane/2-propanol = 9/1
 Flow rate: 70 ml/min → 80 ml/min
 Temperature: 25°C
 Detection method: UV 220 nm

10 $[\alpha]_D^{25} -96.1^\circ$ (c 1.0, MeOH).
 MS (ESI+): 452 (M+H).

Example 613

15 (+)-cis-N-Ethyl-4-[[2-methoxy-5-(trifluoromethoxy)benzyl]amino]-3-phenyl-1-piperidinecarboxamide

[0551]



[0552] The compound (1.70 g) obtained in Example 610 was optically resolved with chiral HPLC, and the fractions were concentrated under reduced pressure to obtain the title compound (0.64 g) as white powder.

Chiral HPLC condition

[0553]

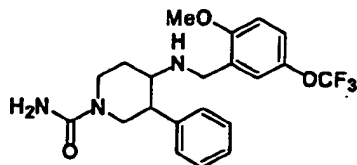
35 Column: CHIRALPAK AS 50 mm ID × 500 mm L
 Solvent: hexane/2-propanol = 9/1
 Flow rate: 70 ml/min → 80 ml/min
 Temperature: 25°C
 Detection method: UV 220 nm

40 $[\alpha]_D^{25} +97.0^\circ$ (c 1.0, MeOH).
 MS (ESI+): 452 (M+H).

Example 657

45 cis-4-[[2-Methoxy-5-(trifluoromethoxy)benzyl]amino]-3-phenyl-1-piperidinecarboxamide hydrochloride

[0554]



[0555] To a solution of the compound (0.23 g) obtained in Example 609, 4-dimethylaminopyridine (0.010 g) and Et₃N

(0.10 g) in THF (3 ml), triphosgene (0.15 g) was added at 0°C, and the reaction mixture was stirred at 0°C for 30 minutes. To the reaction mixture, 28% ammonia water (5 ml) was added, and the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 4 hours. The reaction mixture was poured into water, and then the product was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with an aqueous 10% citric acid solution and saturated brine, dried, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The obtained residue was isolated and purified by preparative HPLC, and the product was treated with 4 N hydrochloric acid/ethyl acetate to obtain the title compound (0.049 mg) as colorless amorphous.

MS (ESI+): 424 (M+H).

Example 660

cis-N-[2-Methoxy-5-[(trifluoromethoxy)benzyl]-1-[3-methyl-1,2,4-thiazol-5-yl]-3-phenyl-4-piperidineamine

[0556] To a solution of the compound (0.45 g) obtained in Example 609 in THF (6 ml), Et₃N (0.20 g) was added, and the resulting precipitates was removed by filtration, and the filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure. The obtained residue was dissolved in ethanol (6 ml), 5-chloro-3-methyl-1,2,4-thiazole (0.27 g) was added thereto, and the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 14 hours. The reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure, and then the obtained residue was isolated and purified by preparative HPLC to obtain the title compound (87 mg) as colorless amorphous.

MS (ESI+): 479 (M+H).

[0557] The compounds of the following Examples were synthesized from Examples 609 or 701 as a starting material by reacting and treating in the same manner as in the method described in Example 660 using the respective corresponding halides.

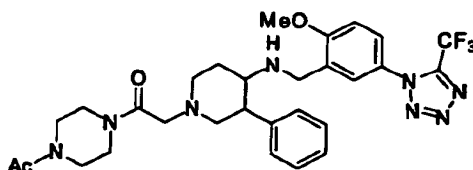
[Table 30]

Ex. No.	Stereo-chemistry	R ¹	X	B	C	MS (ESI) (M+H) ⁺
660	(±)-c/s		NH			479
661	(±)-c/s		NH			464
747	(±)-cis		NH			531

Example 785

cis-1-[2-(4-Acetyl-1-piperazinyl)-2-oxoethyl]-N-[2-methoxy-5-[5-(trifluoromethyl)-1H-tetrazol-1-yl]benzyl]-3-phenyl-4-piperidineamine

[0558]



[0559] The compound (200 mg) obtained in Example 701 was reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 503 to obtain the title compound (96 mg) as colorless amorphous.

MS (ESI⁺): 601 (M+H).

Example 786

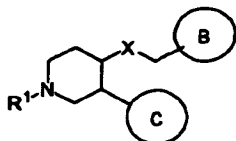
cis-1-Acetyl-N-[2-methoxy-5-[5-(trifluoromethyl)-1H-tetrazol-1-yl]benzyl]-3-phenyl-4-piperidineamine

[0560] To a solution of the compound (0.20 g) obtained in Example 701 in DMF (5 ml), trimethylsilyl chloride (0.13 g) and imidazole (0.082 g) were added, and the reaction mixture was stirred at 110°C for 1 hour. The reaction mixture was poured into an aqueous saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate solution, and then the product was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with saturated brine, dried, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The obtained residue was isolated and purified by silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate : hexane = 2 : 1) to obtain the title compound as pale yellow amorphous (0.090 g).

MS (ESI⁺): 479 (M+H).

[0561] The compounds of the following Examples were synthesized from Example 732 as a starting material by reacting and treating in the same manner as in the method described in Example 786.

[Table 31]



Ex. No.	Stereo-chemistry	R ¹	X	B	C	MS (ESI) (M+H) ⁺
786	(±)-cis	HCO	NH			461
787	(±)-cis		NH			572

Preparative Example 1

[0562]

(1)	Compound of Example 1	10 mg
(2)	Lactose	60 mg
(3)	Corn starch	35 mg
(4)	Hydroxypropylmethylcellulose	3 mg
(5)	Magnesium stearate	2 mg

[0563] A mixture of 10 mg of the compound obtained in Example 1, 60 mg of lactose and 35 mg of corn starch was granulated using 0.03 ml of an aqueous solution of 10 wt% hydroxypropylmethylcellulose (3 mg as hydroxypropylmethylcellulose), and then dried at 40°C and sieved. The obtained granules were mixed with 2 mg of magnesium stearate and compressed. The obtained uncoated tablets were sugar-coated with an aqueous suspension of sucrose, titanium dioxide, talc and gum Arabic. The thus-coated tablets were glazed with bees wax to obtain finally-coated tablets.

Preparative Example 2

[0564]

(1)	Compound of Example 1	10 mg
(2)	Lactose	70 mg
(3)	Corn starch	50 mg
(4)	Soluble starch	7 mg
(5)	Magnesium stearate	3 mg

[0565] 10 mg of the compound obtained in Example 1 and 3 mg of magnesium stearate were granulated with 0.07 ml (7 mg as soluble starch) of an aqueous soluble starch solution, dried, and mixed with 70 mg of lactose and 50 mg of corn starch. The mixture was compressed to obtain tablets.

Reference Preparative Example 1

[0566]

(1)	Rofecoxib	5.0 mg
(2)	Table salt	20.0 mg
(3)	Distilled water	to 2 ml of total volume

[0567] 5.0 mg of rofecoxib and 20.0 mg of table salt were dissolved in distilled water, and water was added to make 2.0 ml of total volume. The solution was filtered, and filled into 2 ml of ampoule under sterile condition. The ampoule was sterilized, and then sealed to obtain a solution for injection.

Reference Preparative Example 2

[0568]

(1)	Rofecoxib	50 mg
(2)	Lactose	34 mg
(3)	Corn starch	10.6 mg
(4)	Corn starch (paste)	5 mg
(5)	Magnesium stearate	0.4 mg
(6)	Calcium carboxymethylcellulose	20 mg
		total 120 mg

[0569] The above-mentioned (1) to (6) were mixed according to a conventional method and were tableted by a tablet machine to obtain tablets.

Preparative Example 3

[0570] The formulation prepared in Preparative Example 1 or 2, and the formulation prepared in Reference Preparative Example 1 or 2 were combined.

Experimental Example 1

Radioligand receptor binding inhibitory activity (Binding inhibitory activity using receptor from human lymphoblast cells (IM-9))

[0571] The method of M. A. Cascieri et al., "Molecular Pharmacology 42, p.458 (1992)" was modified and used. The receptor was prepared from human lymphoblast cells (IM-9). IM-9 cells (2×10^5 cells/ml) were inoculated and incubated for 3 days (one liter), which was then subjected to centrifuge for 5 minutes at $500 \times G$ to obtain cell pellets. The obtained pellets were washed once with phosphate buffer (Flow Laboratories, CAT. No. 28-103-05), which were then crushed using Polytron homogenizer ("Kinematika", Germany) in 30 ml of 50 mM Tris-HCl buffer (pH 7.4) containing 120 mM sodium chloride, 5 mM potassium chloride, 2 μ g/ml chymostatin, 40 μ g/ml bacitracin, 5 μ g/ml phosphoramidon, 0.5 mM phenylmethylsulfonyl fluoride, 1 mM ethylenediamine tetra-acetic acid, which was subjected to centrifuge at $40,000 \times G$ for 20 minutes. The residue was twice washed with 30 ml of the above-mentioned buffer, which was then preserved frozen (-80°C) as a specimen of the receptor.

[0572] The specimen was suspended in a reaction buffer (50 mM Tris-HCl buffer (pH 7.4), 0.02% bovine serum albumin, 1 mM phenylmethylsulfonyl fluoride, 2 μ g/ml chymostatin, 40 μ g/ml bacitracin and 3 mM manganese chloride) to have protein in the concentration of 0.5 mg/ml of protein and 100 μ l portion of the suspension was used in the reaction. After addition of the sample and ^{125}I -BHSP (0.46 KBq), the reaction was allowed to proceed in 0.2 ml of reaction buffer at 25°C for 30 minutes. The amount of nonspecific binding was determined by adding substance P at a final concentration of 2×10^{-6} M.

[0573] After the reaction, using a cell harvester (290 PHD, Cambridge Technology, Inc, U.S.A.), rapid filtration was carried out through a glass filter (GF/B, Whatman, U.S.A.) to stop the reaction. After washing three times with 250 μ l of 50 mM Tris-HCl buffer (pH 7.4) containing 0.02% bovine serum albumin, the radioactivity remaining on the filter was determined with a gamma counter. Before use, the filter was immersed in 0.1% polyethyleneimine for 24 hours and air-dried.

[0574] The antagonistic activity of each compound obtained in Examples was determined in terms of the concentration necessary to cause 50% inhibition (IC_{50} value) under the above-described conditions, and the results were shown in Table 32.

[Table 32]

Example No.	IC_{50} Value (nM)
70	0.150
72	0.032
75	0.025
78	0.060
81	0.058
84	0.051
88	0.060
413	0.230
613	0.070
722	0.110
753	0.073
755	0.096
757	0.067
760	0.085
761	0.054
762	0.049

[Table 32] (continued)

Example No.	IC ₅₀ Value (nM)
763	0.080
764	0.042

[0575] Radioligand means substance P labeled with [¹²⁵I].

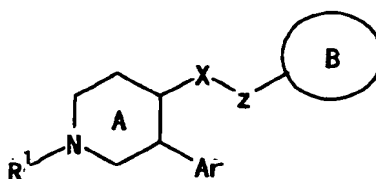
[0576] From Table 32, it is understood that the compounds of the present invention have an excellent substance P receptor antagonistic effect.

INDUSTRIAL APPLICABILITY

[0577] Compound (I), a salt thereof or a prodrug of the present invention has high antagonistic action for a tachykinin receptor, particularly antagonistic action for Substance P receptor, and has low toxicity, thus being safe as a medicament. Therefore, Compound (I), a salt thereof or a prodrug of the present invention is useful as a medicament, for example, a tachykinin receptor antagonist, an agent for ameliorating abnormal micturition, etc.

Claims

1. A compound represented by the formula:



(I)

wherein Ar is an aryl group, an aralkyl group or an aromatic heterocyclic group, each of which may be substituted, R¹ is a hydrogen atom, an optionally substituted hydrocarbon group, an acyl group or an optionally substituted heterocyclic group, X is an oxygen atom or an optionally substituted imino group, Z is an optionally substituted methylene group, Ring A is an optionally further substituted piperidine ring, and Ring B is an optionally substituted aromatic ring, provided that when Z is a methylene group substituted with an oxo group, R¹ is not a methyl group, and when Z is a methylene group substituted with a methyl group, Ring B is a substituted aromatic ring, or a salt thereof.

2. The compound according to claim 1, wherein Ar is a phenyl group or a benzhydryl group, each of which may be substituted.
3. The compound according to claim 1, wherein R¹ is a hydrogen atom or an acyl group.
4. The compound according to claim 1, wherein Z is a methylene group optionally substituted with either (i) an optionally substituted lower alkyl group or (ii) an oxo group, and Ring B is an optionally substituted benzene ring.
5. The compound according to claim 1, wherein Ar is a phenyl group, a benzhydryl group or a benzyl group, each of which may be substituted with 1 to 4 substituents selected from (A) a halogen atom, (B) a C₁₋₆ alkyl group, and (C) a heterocyclic group,
 R¹ is (1) a hydrogen atom,
 (2) a hydrocarbon group optionally having 1 to 3 substituents selected from (i) a C₁₋₆ alkoxy group, (ii) a C₁₋₆ alkoxy-carbonyl group, (iii) a carbamoyl group, (iv) a cyano group, (v) a C₁₋₆ alkylthio group, or (vi) a heterocyclic group optionally substituted with 1 or 2 oxo groups and optionally fused with a benzene ring,
 (3) an acyl group represented by the formula: -(C=O)-Ra, -(C=S)-Ra, -SO₂-Ra, -SO₂-NRaRa', -(C=O)NRaRa'

or -(C=O)O-Ra wherein Ra is (A) a hydrogen atom or

(B) (a) a hydrocarbon group or (b) a heterocyclic group, each of which may be substituted with 1 to 2 substituents selected from (i) a halogen atom,

(ii) a C₁₋₆ alkyl group optionally substituted with a heterocyclic group, C₁₋₆ alkanoyl or C₆₋₁₄ aryl-carbonyl,

(iii) a C₁₋₆ alkoxy group,

(iv) an amino group,

(v) a mono- or di-C₁₋₆ alkylamino group,

(vi) a C₁₋₆ alkanoylamino group,

(vii) a N-C₁₋₆ alkyl-N'-C₁₋₆ alkanoylamino group,

(viii) a C₁₋₆ alkoxy-carbonyl group,

(ix) a C₁₋₆ alkanoyl group optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkoxy, mono- or di-C₁₋₆ alkylamino, halogeno C₁₋₆ alkyl or a halogen atom,

(x) a C₆₋₁₄ aryl-carbonyl group,

(xi) a C₇₋₁₉ aralkyl-carbonyl group,

(xii) a C₃₋₆ cycloalkyl-carbonyl group,

(xiii) a heterocyclic-carbonyl group,

(xiv) a hydroxy group,

(xv) a C₇₋₁₉ aralkyloxy group,

(xvi) a C₃₋₆ cycloalkyloxy group,

(xvii) a C₁₋₆ alkoxy-C₁₋₆ alkoxy group,

(xviii) a carbamoyl group,

(xix) a mono- or di-C₁₋₆ alkylcarbamoyl group,

(xx) a C₁₋₆ alkylsulfonyl group,

(xxi) a mono- or di-C₁₋₆ alkylaminosulfonyl group,

(xxii) a formyl group,

(xxiii) a formylamino group,

(xxiv) an oxo group, and

(xxv) a heterocyclic group optionally having 1 or 2 substituents selected from C₁₋₆ alkanoyl and C₁₋₆ alkoxy-C₁₋₆ alkanoyl, and

Ra' is a hydrogen atom or a C₁₋₆ alkyl group, or

(4) a heterocyclic group optionally having 1 or 2 substituents selected from a C₁₋₆ alkyl group and an oxo group,

X is O or NH,

Z is a methylene group, and

Ring B is a benzene ring optionally having 1 or 2 substituents selected from (i) a heterocyclic group optionally substituted with an optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkyl group or a C₁₋₆ alkylthio group, (ii) an optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkyl group, (iii) an optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkoxy group, (iv) a halogen atom, (v) nitro, (vi) a C₆₋₁₄ aryl group optionally substituted with optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkyl, (vii) an optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkylamino group, (viii) a cyano group, and (ix) a C₃₋₆ cycloalkyloxy, and optionally fused with a non-aromatic heterocyclic ring or a benzene ring.

6. The compound according to claim 1, wherein Ar is a phenyl group,

R¹ is -(C=O)-Rb or -(C=O)NRbRb' (Rb is (1) a hydrocarbon group or (2) a heterocyclic group, each of which optionally has a substituent selected from (i) hydroxy, (ii) C₁₋₆ alkoxy, (iii) C₁₋₆ alkanoyl, (iv) C₁₋₆ alkylsulfonyl, (v) amino, (vi) mono- or di-C₁₋₆ alkylamino, (vii) C₁₋₆ alkanoylamino or (viii) a heterocyclic group optionally substituted with 1 or 2 oxo groups, and Rb' is a hydrogen atom or a C₁₋₆ alkyl group.),

X is O or NH,

Z is a methylene group,

Ring B is a benzene ring optionally having 1 or 2 substituents selected from (i) a heterocyclic group optionally substituted with an optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkyl group, (ii) an optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkyl group and (iii) an optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkoxy group, and optionally fused with a non-aromatic heterocyclic ring.

7. cis-4-((3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl)oxy)-N-methyl-3-phenyl-1-piperidinecarboxamide,

cis-1-((1-acetyl-4-piperidinyl)carbonyl)-4-((3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl)oxy)-3-phenylpiperidine,

cis-N-ethyl-4-((2-methoxy-5-(trifluoromethoxy)benzyl)amino)-3-phenyl-1-piperidinecarboxamide,

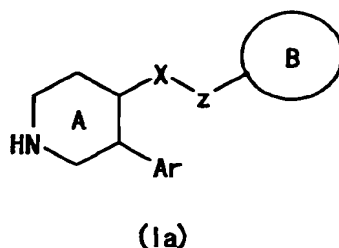
cis-N-methyl-3-phenyl-4-(((5-(5-(trifluoromethyl)-1H-tetrazol-1-yl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzofuran-7-yl)methyl)amino)-1-piperidinecarboxamide,

cis-N-ethyl-3-phenyl-4-(((5-(5-(trifluoromethyl)-1H-tetrazol-1-yl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzofuran-7-yl)methyl)ami-

no)-1-piperidinecarboxamide,
 cis-1-((1-acetyl-4-piperidiny)carbonyl)-3-phenyl-N-((5-(5-(trifluoromethyl)-1H-tetrazol-1-yl)-2,3-dihydro-
 1-benzofuran-7-yl)methyl)-4-piperidineamine,
 cis-4-((2-methoxy-5-(5-(trifluoromethyl)-1H-tetrazol-1-yl)benzyl)amino)-N-methyl-3-phenyl-1-piperidinecar-
 5 boxamide,
 cis-N-ethyl-4-((2-methoxy-5-(5-(trifluoromethyl)-1H-tetrazol-1-yl)benzyl)amino)-3-phenyl-1-piperidinecar-
 boxamide,
 cis-1-(methoxyacetyl)-N-(2-methoxy-5-(5-(trifluoromethyl)-1H-tetrazol-1-yl)benzyl)-3-phenyl-4-piperidine-
 amine,
 10 cis-1-((1-acetyl-4-piperidiny)carbonyl)-N-(2-methoxy-5-(5-(trifluoromethyl)-1H-tetrazol-1-yl)benzyl)-3-phenyl-4-piperidineamine,
 cis-N-(2-(4-((2-methoxy-5-(5-(trifluoromethyl)-1H-tetrazol-1-yl)benzyl)amino)-3-phenyl-1-piperidiny)-2-ox-
 oethyl)acetamide,
 cis-N-(2-methoxy-5-(5-(trifluoromethyl)-1H-tetrazol-1-yl)benzyl)-1-((1-(methylsulfonyl)-4-piperidiny)carbonyl)-3-phenyl-4-piperidineamine,
 15 cis-N-(2-methoxy-5-(5-(trifluoromethyl)-1H-tetrazol-1-yl)benzyl)-3-phenyl-1-(1H-tetrazol-1-ylacetyl)-4-piperidineamine,
 cis-2-(4-((2-methoxy-5-(5-(trifluoromethyl)-1H-tetrazol-1-yl)benzyl)amino)-3-phenyl-1-piperidiny)-2-ox-
 oethanol,
 20 cis-N-(3-(4-((2-methoxy-5-(5-(trifluoromethyl)-1H-tetrazol-1-yl)benzyl)amino)-3-phenyl-1-piperidiny)-3-oxo-
 propyl)acetamide,
 cis-1-acetyl-N-(2-methoxy-5-(5-(trifluoromethyl)-1H-tetrazol-1-yl)benzyl)-3-phenyl-4-piperidineamine,
 cis-N-(2-methoxy-5-(5-(trifluoromethyl)-1H-tetrazol-1-yl)benzyl)-1-((methylsulfonyl)acetyl)-3-phenyl-4-piperidineamine, or
 25 cis-1-(2-(4-((2-methoxy-5-(5-(trifluoromethyl)-1H-tetrazol-1-yl)benzyl)amino)-3-phenyl-1-piperidiny)-2-ox-
 oethyl)-2,5-pyrrolidinedione, or a salt thereof.

8. A prodrug of the compound according to claim 1.

9. A method of preparing the compound according to claim 1, which comprises subjecting a compound represented by the formula:

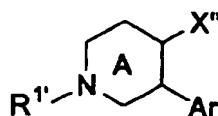


wherein each symbol has the same meanings as defined in claim 1, or a salt thereof to a reaction with a compound represented by the formula:



wherein R^{1a} is an optionally substituted hydrocarbon group, an acyl group or an optionally substituted heterocyclic group, a salt thereof or a reactive derivative thereof, and if desired, to deacylation or dealkylation.

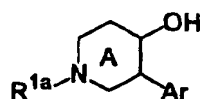
10. A compound represented by the formula:



(II)

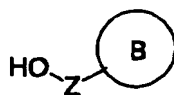
wherein R¹ is an acyl group or an optionally substituted heterocyclic group, X'' is a hydroxy group or an amino group, and other symbols have the same meanings as defined in claim 1, provided that when X'' is a hydroxy group, R¹ is neither an ethoxycarbonyl group nor a cyclopropylcarbonyl group, or a salt thereof.

11. A method of preparing the compound according to claim 1, which comprises subjecting a compound represented by the formula:



(IIa)

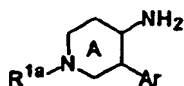
wherein R^{1a} has the same meanings as defined in claim 9, and other symbols have the same meanings as defined in claim 1, or a salt thereof to a reaction with a compound represented by the formula:



(III)

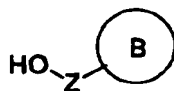
wherein each symbol has the same meanings as defined in claim 1, a salt thereof or a reactive derivative thereof, and if desired, to deacylation or dealkylation.

12. A method of preparing the compound according to claim 1, which comprises subjecting a compound represented by the formula:



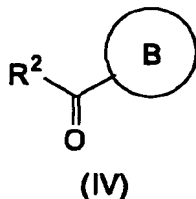
(IIb)

wherein R^{1a} has the same meanings as defined in claim 9, and other symbols have the same meanings as defined in claim 1, or a salt thereof to a reaction with a compound represented by the formula:



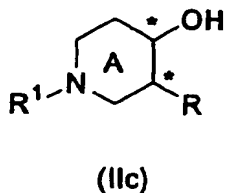
(III)

wherein each symbol has the same meanings as defined in claim 1, a salt thereof or a reactive derivative thereof, or subjecting Compound (IIb) to a reaction with a compound represented by the formula:

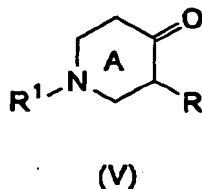


wherein R² is a hydrogen atom or an optionally substituted hydrocarbon group, and Ring B has the same meaning as defined in claim 1, in the presence of a reducing agent, and if desired, to deacylation or dealkylation.

13. A method of preparing optically active alcohol represented by the formula:

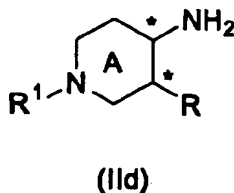


wherein R is an optionally substituted hydrocarbon group or an optionally substituted heterocyclic group, * is a chiral center, and other symbols have the same meanings as defined in claim 1, and OH and R have a cis configuration relationship, or a salt thereof, which comprises subjecting a compound represented by the formula

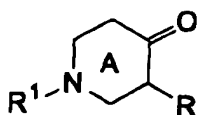


wherein each symbol has the same meanings as defined above, or a salt thereof, to hydrogenation in the presence of an optically active ruthenium-phosphine-amine complex and a base.

14. A method of preparing optically active amine represented by the formula:

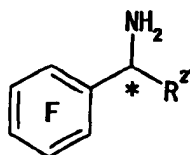


wherein R has the same meaning as defined in claim 13, * is a chiral center, and other symbols have the same meanings as defined in claim 1, NH₂ and R have a cis configuration relationship, or a salt thereof, which comprises subjecting a compound represented by the formula:



(V)

wherein each symbol has the same meanings as defined above, or a salt thereof, to condensation with an optically active compound represented by the formula:



(VI)

wherein Ring F is an optionally substituted, optionally fused benzene ring, R² is an optionally substituted hydrocarbon group, and other symbols have the same meanings as defined above, or a salt thereof, followed by hydrogenation and further hydrogenolysis.

15. A medicament comprising the compound according to claim 1 or a prodrug thereof.

16. The medicament according to claim 15, which is a tachykinin receptor antagonist.

17. The medicament according to claim 15, which is an agent for preventing and/or treating abnormality of lower urinary tract functions, digestive organ diseases, inflammatory or allergic diseases, arthropathy and/or osteopathy, respiratory diseases, infection, cancer, central nerve diseases, circulatory diseases, pain, autoimmune diseases, hepatic diseases, pancreatic diseases, renal diseases, metabolic diseases, endocrine diseases, graft rejection, abnormality in characteristic of blood and/or blood components, gynecologic diseases, dermatologic diseases, ophthalmic diseases, otolaryngological diseases, diseases due to environmental and/or occupational factors, ataxia or chronic fatigue syndrome.

18. The medicament according to claim 15, which is an agent for preventing and/or treating urinary frequency and/or urinary incontinence.

19. A method of preventing and/or treating abnormality of lower urinary tract functions, digestive organ diseases, inflammatory or allergic diseases, arthropathy and/or osteopathy, respiratory diseases, infection, cancer, central nerve diseases, circulatory diseases, pain, autoimmune diseases, hepatic diseases, pancreatic diseases, renal diseases, metabolic diseases, endocrine diseases, graft rejection, abnormality in characteristic of blood and/or blood components, gynecologic diseases, dermatologic diseases, ophthalmic diseases, otolaryngological diseases, diseases due to environmental and/or occupational factors, ataxia or chronic fatigue syndrome, which comprises administering an effective amount of the compound according to claim 1 or a prodrug thereof to a mammal.

20. Use of the compound according to claim 1 or a prodrug thereof for manufacturing an agent for preventing and/or treating abnormality of lower urinary tract functions, digestive organ diseases, inflammatory or allergic diseases, arthropathy and/or osteopathy, respiratory diseases, infection, cancer, central nerve diseases, circulatory diseases, pain, autoimmune diseases, hepatic diseases, pancreatic diseases, renal diseases, metabolic diseases, endocrine diseases, graft rejection, abnormality in characteristic of blood and/or blood components, gynecologic diseases, dermatologic diseases, ophthalmic diseases, otolaryngological diseases, diseases due to environmental and/or occupational factors, ataxia or chronic fatigue syndrome.

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No.

PCT/JP03/06754

A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER Int.Cl ⁷ C07D211/46, 211/58, 401/06, 405/06, 409/06, 417/12, 401/12, 405/12, 409/12, A61K31/445, 31/451, 31/4525, 31/454, 31/4545, 45/00, 31/4468, 31/5377, 31/496, According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classification and IPC		
B. FIELDS SEARCHED Minimum documentation searched (classification system followed by classification symbols) Int.Cl ⁷ C07D211/46, 211/58, 401/06, 405/06, 409/06, 417/12, 401/12, 405/12, 409/12, A61K31/445, 31/451, 31/4525, 31/454, 31/4545, 45/00, 31/4468, 31/5377, 31/496, Documentation searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that such documents are included in the fields searched Electronic data base consulted during the international search (name of data base and, where practicable, search terms used) REGISTRY (STN), CAPLUS (STN), CAOLD (STN)		
C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT		
Category*	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
X	WO 99/47511 A1 (MERCK SHARP & DOHME LTD.), 23 September, 1999 (23.09.99), Example 2 & AU 9929438 A1	1, 3, 4
X	David J. HALLETT et al., Neighboring Group Participation of the Indole Nucleus: An Unusual DAST-Mediated Rearrangement Reaction, J.Org.Chem., 2000, Vol.65, No.16, pages 4984 to 4993, compounds 17, 30	1, 3, 4
X	WO 93/09780 A1 (BYK GULDEN LOMBERG CHEMISCHE FABRIK GMBH), 27 May, 1993 (27.05.93), Beispiel 3 & EP 612247 A1 & AU 9229349 A1	1, 2, 4, 12
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Further documents are listed in the continuation of Box C. <input type="checkbox"/> See patent family annex.		
* Special categories of cited documents: "A" document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance "E" earlier document but published on or after the international filing date "L" document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified) "O" document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means "P" document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed "T" later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention "X" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone "Y" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art "&" document member of the same patent family		
Date of the actual completion of the international search 19 August, 2003 (19.08.03)		Date of mailing of the international search report 02 September, 2003 (02.09.03)
Name and mailing address of the ISA/ Japanese Patent Office		Authorized officer
Facsimile No.		Telephone No.

Form PCT/ISA/210 (second sheet) (July 1998)

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No.

PCT/JP03/06754

C (Continuation). DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT		
Category*	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
A	WO 02/26710 A1 (Tanabe Seiyaku Co., Ltd.), 04 April, 2002 (04.04.02), & AU 9223601 A & JP 2002-234874 A	1-9, 11, 12, 15-18, 20
A	WO 93/01170 A1 (PFIZER INC.), 21 January, 1993 (21.01.93), & JP 6-508828 A & US 5232929 A & CA 2111461 A & EP 594636 A1	1-9, 11, 12, 15-18, 20

Form PCT/ISA/210 (continuation of second sheet) (July 1998)

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No.

PCT/JP03/06754

Continuation of A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER
(International Patent Classification (IPC))

Int.Cl⁷ A61P1/00, 1/08, 1/16, 1/18, 3/00, 11/00, 11/06, 11/14, 13/02,
13/08, 13/12, 17/00, 19/02, 25/00, 25/04, 25/18, 25/22,
25/24, 29/00, 31/00, 37/08, 43/00

(According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national
classification and IPC)

Continuation of B. FIELDS SEARCHED

Minimum Documentation Searched (International Patent Classification (IPC))

Int.Cl⁷ A61P1/00, 1/08, 1/16, 1/18, 3/00, 11/00, 11/06, 11/14, 13/02,
13/08, 13/12, 17/00, 19/02, 25/00, 25/04, 25/18, 25/22,
25/24, 29/00, 31/00, 37/08, 43/00

Minimum documentation searched (classification system followed by
classification symbols)

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No.

PCT/JP03/06754

Box I Observations where certain claims were found unsearchable (Continuation of item 2 of first sheet)

This international search report has not been established in respect of certain claims under Article 17(2)(a) for the following reasons:

- 1.
- ☒
- Claims Nos.: 19

because they relate to subject matter not required to be searched by this Authority, namely:

Claim 19 pertains to a method for treatment of the human body by therapy.

- 2.
- ☐
- Claims Nos.:

because they relate to parts of the international application that do not comply with the prescribed requirements to such an extent that no meaningful international search can be carried out, specifically:

- 3.
- ☐
- Claims Nos.:

because they are dependent claims and are not drafted in accordance with the second and third sentences of Rule 6.4(a).

Box II Observations where unity of invention is lacking (Continuation of item 3 of first sheet)This International Searching Authority found multiple inventions in this international application, as follows:
(See extra sheet)

1. ☐ As all required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant, this international search report covers all searchable claims.
2. ☐ As all searchable claims could be searched without effort justifying an additional fee, this Authority did not invite payment of any additional fee.
3. ☐ As only some of the required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant, this international search report covers only those claims for which fees were paid, specifically claims Nos.:
4. ☒ No required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant. Consequently, this international search report is restricted to the invention first mentioned in the claims; it is covered by claims Nos.:
Claims 1-9, 11, 12, 15-18, and 20

- Remark on Protest ☐ The additional search fees were accompanied by the applicant's protest.
- ☐ No protest accompanied the payment of additional search fees.

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No.

PCT/JP03/06754

Continuation of Box No. II of continuation of first sheet (1)

I. The subject matter of claim 1 relates to a compound represented by the formula (I), while the subject matter of claim 10 relates to an intermediate represented by the formula (II). A chemical structure common to both is a piperidine skeleton having acyl or an optionally substituted heterocyclic group in the 1-position, having in the 3-position an aryl, aralkyl, or aromatic heterocyclic group which may be substituted, and having an oxygen or nitrogen atom in the 4-position. However, compounds having such structure are already known as described in the documents, i.e., WO 99/47511 A1 (see EXAMPLE 12) and *J. Org. Chem.*, 2000, Vol. 65, No. 16, pp. 4984-4993 (see schemes 5 and 8). That chemical structure cannot hence be considered to be an important chemical structural element.

II. The special technical feature of claim 13 is to produce an optically active alcohol represented by the formula (IIc) from a compound represented by the formula (V). On the other hand, the special technical feature of claim 1 is to provide a novel compound represented by the formula (I), while the special technical feature of claim 10 is to provide a novel compound represented by the formula (II). There is no technical relationship, between claim 13 and each of claim 1 and claim 10, which involves one or more identical or corresponding special technical features.

III. The special technical feature of claim 14 is to produce an optically active amine represented by the formula (IIId) from a compound represented by the formula (V). On the other hand, the special technical feature of claim 1 is to provide a novel compound represented by the formula (I), while the special technical feature of claim 10 is to provide a novel compound represented by the formula (II). There is no technical relationship, between claim 14 and each of claim 1 and claim 10, which involves one or more identical or corresponding special technical features.

It is considered from I. to III. above that the subject matters of this application are classified into four groups of inventions consisting of: 1) claims 1-9, 11, 12, 15-18, and 20; 2) claim 10; 3) claim 13; and 4) claim 14.

THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)